

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 930CA.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

**SoftBank 930CA is compatible with 3G network technology.**

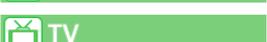
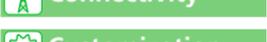
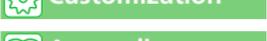
## Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52) about unclear or missing information.

- Download the latest edition of this guide from SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website.  
<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/930ca/>

# Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 930CA is referred to as “handset” in this guide.
  - Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
  - Sample screenshots\* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
  - Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
  - “(Japanese)” appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- \* Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 930CA Red model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default settings.

 Getting Started	1
 Basic Operations	2
 Calling	3
 Security	4
 Mail	5
 Internet	6
 Camera	7
 TV	8
 Music Player & S! Appli	9
 Entertainment	10
 Tools	11
 Data Management	12
 Connectivity	13
 Customization	14
 Appendix	15

# Search Guide

## ● Function & Service Name Search

Table of Contents .....	P. iv
Menu List .....	P. 15-21
Index .....	P. 15-40



## ● Display Indicators



P. 1-8 - P. 1-9

## ● Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-8

## ● Solving Problems

Troubleshooting .....	P. 15-6 - P. 15-10
Warranty & After Sales Service .....	P. 15-51



## ● Objective Search



Mastering Basics

My Number &  
E-mail Address

Customizing  
Handset

930CA Features

SoftBank Mobile  
Features

<b>Basic Operations</b> Learn basic menu navigation and key operations. <b>P. 2-2</b>	<b>Text Entry</b> Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc. <b>P. 2-11</b>	<b>Messaging Services</b> Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail. <b>P. 5-2</b>	<b>Mobile Internet</b> Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers. <b>P. 6-2</b>
<b>My Phone Number</b> Check your phone number on handset. <b>P. 1-22</b>	<b>My Account Details</b> Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends. <b>P. 1-22</b>	<b>Customize E-mail Address</b> Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address. <b>P. 14-23</b>	<b>Exchange Information Wirelessly</b> Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared. <b>P. 13-2</b>
<b>Download Music</b> Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player. <b>P. 9-4</b>	<b>Set Ringtones</b> Set your favorite songs as ringtones. <b>P. 14-11</b>	<b>Wallpaper</b> Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar. <b>P. 14-4</b>	<b>Add Shortcuts</b> Add frequently used functions to Standby shortcut icons. <b>P. 2-5</b>
<b>Music Player</b> Download songs and play them on handset. <b>P. 9-2</b>	<b>Camera &amp; Video Camera</b> Shoot still images and videos. <b>P. 7-2</b>	<b>TV</b> Handset supports One Seg Digital TV. <b>P. 8-2</b>	<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b> Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card. <b>P. 11-2</b>
<b>Yahoo! Keitai Sites</b> A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience. <b>P. 6-3</b>	<b>Graphic Mail</b> Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc. <b>P. 5-4</b>	<b>Gaming Device</b> Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites. <b>P. 9-8</b>	<b>S! Quick News</b> Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly. <b>P. 10-2</b>

# Table of Contents

Before Using This Guide.....	i
Search Guide.....	ii
Table of Contents.....	iv
Package Contents.....	vi
Safety Precautions.....	vii
General Notes.....	xxii

## 1 Getting Started

Handset Parts.....	1-2
Display.....	1-8
USIM Card.....	1-10
Battery & AC Charger.....	1-13
Power On/Off.....	1-18
Mobile Manners.....	1-20
Codes.....	1-21
Other Basic Information.....	1-22

## 2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations.....	2-2
Multi Function.....	2-9
Text Entry.....	2-11
Phone Book.....	2-19
S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-26
Advanced Features.....	2-28

## 3 Calling

Overview.....	3-2
Voice Call.....	3-3
Video Call.....	3-7
Call Logs.....	3-10
Speed Dial.....	3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming).....	3-13
Optional Services.....	3-14
Advanced Features.....	3-16

## 4 Security

PIN Settings.....	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use.....	4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls.....	4-7
Setting Secret Data.....	4-9

## 5 Mail

Overview.....	5-2
Sending Messages.....	5-3

Receiving & Opening Messages.....	5-7
Handling Messages.....	5-10
Advanced Features.....	5-16

## 6 Internet

Overview.....	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
Page Operations.....	6-8
Bookmarks & Saved Pages... Advanced Features.....	6-10 6-12

## 7 Camera

Overview.....	7-2
Basics.....	7-6
Various Camera Features.....	7-13
Camera Menu.....	7-16
Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer... Advanced Features.....	7-19 7-24

## 8 TV

About TV.....	8-2
---------------	-----

Initial Setup .....	8-5
Watching TV .....	8-6
Recording/Playing Programs ...	8-10
View/Record Timer .....	8-13
Advanced Features .....	8-15

## 9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player .....	9-2
Music Playback.....	9-5
S! Appli.....	9-8
Advanced Features .....	9-11

## 10 Entertainment

S! Quick News .....	10-2
S! Info Channel/Weather Indicator .....	10-3
Books .....	10-5
Advanced Features .....	10-6

## 11 Tools

Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-2
Schedule .....	11-6
To Do List .....	11-9

Text Memo .....	11-11
Voice Memo .....	11-12
Calculator .....	11-13
Alarm .....	11-14
Bar Code Reader .....	11-16
Text Reader .....	11-18
Advanced Features .....	11-21

## 12 Data Management

About Data Folder .....	12-2
Accessing Files .....	12-3
Editing Files.....	12-7
File & Folder Management...	12-9
About Memory Card.....	12-10
Managing Memory Cards ..	12-12
Advanced Features .....	12-15

## 13 Connectivity

Infrared.....	13-2
PC Connection.....	13-5

## 14 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds.....	14-2
------------------------------	------

Phone Book & Calls .....	14-16
Mail.....	14-22
Internet .....	14-26
TV.....	14-28
Camera .....	14-31
Player & S! Appli.....	14-35
Entertainment.....	14-37
Other Settings .....	14-39

## 15 Appendix

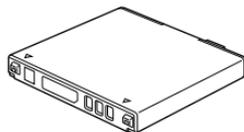
Multi Function	
Combinations.....	15-2
Software Update .....	15-4
Troubleshooting .....	15-6
Text Entry Key	
Assignments .....	15-11
Kuten Code List .....	15-14
Weather Indicators.....	15-20
Menu List .....	15-21
Specifications .....	15-35
Index.....	15-40
Warranty & After Sales	
Service .....	15-51
Customer Service .....	15-52

# Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.

For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

## ■ Battery (CHBAA1)



## ■ Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable\*



## ■ Starter Guide

## ■ Warranty (Handset)

- SoftBank 930CA supports microSD™ and microSDHC™ memory cards. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

\*Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

# Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

## ■ Labels

- Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

 <b>DANGER</b>	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 <b>WARNING</b>	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 <b>CAUTION</b>	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

- \*1 Serious injury: Includes loss of eyesight, physical injury, burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, bone fracture, poisoning, and other conditions with long-term consequences that require hospitalization and/or prolonged treatment.
- \*2 Injury: Includes physical injury, burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions

without long-term consequences that do not require hospitalization and/or prolonged treatment.

- \*3 Damage to property: Includes incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.

## ■ Symbols

- Make sure to understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Wetting the product is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Unplug power cord.

## Safety Precautions

### ■ Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), & Memory Card (Not Included)

# DANGER

	<p><b>Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger, etc.) only.</b></p> <p>Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, or malfunction. Use of non-specified USIM Card may cause loss of data or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset.</b></p> <p>May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modification of telephone equipment violates statutory regulations and is subject to penalty. SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damage to handset or to a vehicle due to user modifications.</p>
	<p><b>Keep away from liquids.</b></p> <p>If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.</p>
	<p><b>Do not charge, use, or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).</b></p> <p>May cause deformation, malfunction, impair performance or shorten Battery life. Battery may leak, overheat, ignite or rupture. Outer housing may become hot resulting in burns or fire.</p>

	<p><b>Do not use excessive force to attach Battery or connect AC Charger to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.</b></p> <p>Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>Do not heat or throw into a fire.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to ignite, rupture, or may cause a fire.</p>
	<p><b>Do not expose camera lens to direct sunlight for an extended period.</b></p> <p>May cause handset/battery to ignite, rupture, break, or may cause a fire.</p>

## **WARNING**

	<p><b>Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, or USIM Card in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on top of an induction heating (IH) cooktop.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset/AC Charger to overheat, emit smoke, ignite, or malfunction; or may cause circuitry damage.</p>
	<p><b>Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.</b></p> <p>Gases may ignite. Before using a mobile phone with Osaifu-Keitai® inside a gas station, be sure to turn it off (If an IC card lock is activated, first deactivate it and turn power off).</p>
	<p><b>Do not drop or throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock, or malfunction.</p>

	<p><b>If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately do the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet.</li> <li>2. Turn handset power off.</li> <li>3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury. Continuing use may cause fire or electric shock.</li> </ol>
	<p><b>Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments or metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from External Device Port.</b></p> <p>May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Do not short-circuit External Device Port when AC Charger is plugged into an AC outlet. Do not touch External Device Port with your fingers, etc.</b></p> <p>May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.</p>
	<p><b>Do not use handset if it was dropped or otherwise damaged and internal parts are exposed.</b></p> <p>May cause shock or injury from damaged parts.</p>

## Safety Precautions



**Do not use handset in humid locations such as bathrooms and do not touch handset with wet hands.**

May cause shock, short-circuiting, and corrosion (When carrying handset on the body, moisture from perspiration may cause damage. Be also especially careful when using handset in rain or snow, at the beach, or near water). If handset has become wet, immediately unplug AC Charger and remove battery. Damage caused by water or humidity is not covered by the warranty, and repair may not be possible.



**Do not play games, listen to music, or watch TV on handset while driving a vehicle, riding a bicycle or while walking.**

Doing so is unsafe and may lead to accidents.



## CAUTION



**Do not place handset on a sloping or unstable surface.**

May cause handset to fall resulting in injury or malfunction. Take particular care when vibrator is activated.



**Keep handset out of reach from infants. Be careful when One Seg Antenna is extended.**

Infant may accidentally swallow parts or memory card, causing suffocation or injury.



**When a child uses handset, it is recommended that a parent provide proper instructions to the child and keep an eye on how the child uses handset.**

Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.



**Do not store handset in humid/dusty places or locations subject to extremely low/high temperatures.**

May cause malfunction.

	<p><b>Do not exceed maximum ratings for outlets, cables, and wiring components.</b></p> <p>"Piggybacking" of plugs causing maximum ratings to be exceeded may lead to overheating and fire.</p>
	<p><b>Do not place handset near corrosive chemicals or in locations subject to corrosive gases.</b></p> <p>May lead to damage and loss of stored data.</p>
	<p><b>Do not use handset in locations with high humidity.</b></p> <p>If worn close to the body, perspiration may cause damage and malfunction. Damage caused by water or humidity is not covered by the warranty, and repair may not be possible.</p>
	<p><b>Do not use handset for an extended period of time with AC Charger connected.</b></p> <p>Handset, battery and charger (sold separately) may become warm if you operate handset for an extended period of time while charging. Prolonged contact with warm devices may cause redness, itching, irritation or low-temperature burns.</p>

## ■ Handling Battery



- Properly use and dispose of Battery after checking its type as displayed on the label on Battery.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

	<p><b>Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it, or subject it to strong impact.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>Do not short-circuit Battery. Keep metal parts (pins, etc.) away from Battery terminals or Battery plus (+) and minus (-) terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments or metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) with Battery.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.</p>

## Safety Precautions

	<p><b>If battery fluid gets into your eyes, immediately rinse your eyes with clean water without rubbing them, and consult a doctor.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may result in losing your eyesight.</p>
	<p><b>Do not expose battery to fresh or salt water, pet urine, or other fluids. Do not charge battery while wet. If handset was dropped into water or other fluid, immediately turn off power and discontinue use.</b></p> <p>Wet battery may overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>Do not use damaged or leaking battery.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>



## WARNING

	<p><b>If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop using and rinse the fluid off with clean water.</b></p> <p>Battery fluid may injure your skin.</p>
	<p><b>If battery is not fully charged after specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging it.</b></p> <p>Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and handset may be damaged or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset being careful of burn or injury, and keep it away from fire.</b></p> <p>Continuing use may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>If Battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.</b></p> <p>Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite causing fire or could rupture.</p>

	<b>Do not use a battery that has been subject to strong external force or shock (such as being dropped or stepped on).</b>
	Continuing use may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause malfunction or fire.
	<b>Do not allow pets to bite Battery.</b>
	May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.

 **CAUTION**

	<b>Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.</b>
	Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

■ Handling Handset

 **WARNING**

	<b>Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.)</b>
	May cause a traffic accident. Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty. Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.
	<b>Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.</b>
	Failing to do so may interfere with the device operation. * Examples of such devices: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, consult with the individual medical device manufacturer or distributor about the possible influence of radio waves.

## Safety Precautions

	<p><b>Keep handset power off where use is prohibited, such as on an airplane or in a hospital.</b></p> <p>May affect electronic devices or electronic medical equipment. Disable auto power-on functions (such as the alarm function) before turning off handset. May jeopardize safety of the airplane. Handset operation aboard an airplane is prohibited by law and subject to penalty.</p>		<p><b>If you use electronic medical equipment, do not place handset in breast pocket or inner coat pocket.</b></p> <p>Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ring volume settings.</b></p> <p>These may affect your heart.</p>		<p><b>Keep handset away from your ear when calling in handsfree mode. When playing games or music with Earphone-Microphone connected to handset, adjust the volume properly.</b></p> <p>Prolonged listening at excessive volume levels may impair your hearing. Being unable to clearly hear surrounding sounds may result in an accident.</p>
	<p><b>In a thunderstorm, retract One Seg Antenna, immediately turn handset power off and seek shelter.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.</p>		<p><b>Do not place handset on the dashboard close to airbags.</b></p> <p>In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.</p>
	<p><b>Do not point infrared beam at anyone's eyes.</b></p> <p>May cause eye injury. Do not direct infrared beam toward another infrared device as this may interfere with the device operation.</p>		<p><b>If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.</b></p> <p>The Display's reinforced glass prevents shattering; however touching broken glass edges and exposed pieces may cause injury.</p>

	<p><b>Do not turn on the light near a person's eyes. Do not look directly into the light and do not point the light at another person's eyes.</b></p> <p>This may cause impaired eyesight and other injury. In particular, do not take pictures of infants at very close range.</p>
	<p><b>Do not allow fluids such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or microSD™ Memory Card Slot.</b></p> <p>May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Before using handset (calls, mail, camera, games, Internet, Media Player or TV), check your surroundings and make sure that the intended use is safe and appropriate.</b></p> <p>Failure to do so may result in falls or accidents.</p>
	<p><b>Do not point the light at the driver of a vehicle.</b></p> <p>This may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle and lead to accidents.</p>

	<p><b>In very rare cases, stimulation by strong light or flashing images may lead to symptoms such as convulsive fits or temporary loss of consciousness. If you have experienced such symptoms in the past, consult a physician before using the handset.</b></p>
--	--



## CAUTION

	<p><b>If handset affects car electronics, stop use.</b></p> <p>Handset use may affect electronics in some car models and impair safe driving.</p>
	<p><b>If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor.</b></p> <p>Handset contains metal material. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.</p>

## Safety Precautions

	<p><b>Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.</p>
	<p><b>Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.</b></p> <p>Handset may strike you or others, resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage. Do not use a strap that is damaged.</p>
	<p><b>Use caution when using handset for an extended period as handset may become hot, especially in high-temperature conditions.</b></p> <p>Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.</p>
	<p><b>Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing.</b></p> <p>May impair your hearing.</p>
	<p><b>Keep objects from catching in moving parts when sliding handset open/shut.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury.</p>

	<p><b>Be careful not to pinch your fingers or Strap when opening and closing handset.</b></p> <p>May cause injury or damage.</p>
	<p><b>Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.</b></p> <p>May contribute to impaired eyesight.</p>
	<p><b>Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones.</b></p> <p>Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.</p>
	<p><b>If Display breaks do not inhale or touch liquid crystal. If liquid crystal enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If liquid crystal adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water.</b></p> <p>May result in losing your eyesight or harming your skin.</p>
	<p><b>Be careful when using in a location with many people.</b></p> <p>Antenna may hit other persons causing injury.</p>
	<p><b>Do not use One Seg Antenna if broken.</b></p> <p>May cause burns or injuries upon skin contact.</p>

	<b>Do not bend One Seg Antenna or swing handset by One Seg Antenna.</b> May cause injury or deformation/breakage of One Seg Antenna.
	<b>Keep magnetized objects away from handset.</b> May cause operation errors.
	<b>Keep covers (External Device Port, microSD™ Memory Card Slot, etc.) closed.</b> If these are left open, dust or water may get inside handset, causing malfunction.
	<b>Be mindful of objects adhering to handset.</b> The magnetic field near receiver and speaker of handset may cause small metallic objects such as pins, clips, staples or paper cutter blades to adhere to handset, which may lead to injury. Remove any adhering objects before using handset.
	<b>While watching TV on handset, avoid prolonged direct contact with skin and do not cover handset with paper, cloth, blankets or similar.</b> May cause burns and lead to malfunction.

	<b>Speaker volume</b> As earpiece also functions as speaker, be careful of ringtone/alarm sounding close by your ear. Following a call or similar activity, alarm sound will start at a low volume and progress to the set volume regardless of the volume setting.
---	--

### ■ Handling USIM Card



	<b>Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card (IC chip).</b> May injure your hands or fingers.
	<b>Use only specified USIM Cards.</b> Use of non-specified cards may lead to data loss and malfunction. For information on specified USIM Cards, contact your SoftBank dealer or SoftBank Customer Service, General Information (P. 15-52).
	<b>Do not disassemble or modify USIM Card.</b> May lead to data loss and malfunction.

## Safety Precautions

	<b>Avoid open fire, heat sources, direct sunlight, high temperatures or humidity, and high levels of dust.</b> May cause USIM Card to melt, overheat, emit smoke, or may lead to data loss and malfunction.
	<b>Take care not to touch, damage, or short-circuit IC chip on USIM Card.</b> May lead to data loss and malfunction.
	<b>Do not drop USIM Card and protect it from shocks.</b> May lead to malfunction.
	<b>Do not bend or break USIM Card and do not place heavy objects on it.</b> May lead to malfunction.
	<b>Do not let USIM Card get wet.</b> Exposing USIM Card to fluids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunction.
	<b>Keep USIM Card out of reach of infants.</b> Accidental swallowing may lead to suffocation and injury.

## ■ Handling AC Charger



# WARNING

	<b>Do not place Charger on a sloping or unstable surface during charging.</b> May cause handset to fall resulting in malfunction.
	<b>Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging.</b> Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.
	<b>Use the specified power supply and voltage.</b> AC Charger may ignite/overheat, cause electric shock/fire or malfunction. AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only) Also, do not use commercially available transformer for travel use. May cause fire, electric shock, or malfunction.
	<b>Hold and unplug AC Charger from outlet if handset is not used for an extended period of time.</b> Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

	<p><b>Protect AC Charger from water, pet urine, and other fluids. If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately, hold and unplug AC Charger from outlet.</b></p>		<p><b>If thunder is heard, do not touch handset or AC Charger.</b></p>
	<p>Failing to do so may cause AC Charger to overheat, ignite, emit smoke, or may cause electric shock or fire.</p>		<p><b>Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning.</b></p>
	<p><b>If dust or dirt has gotten on the plug, hold and unplug AC Charger from outlet and wipe off with a dry cloth.</b></p>		<p><b>Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger.</b></p>
	<p><b>When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from AC Charger plug and insert plug completely into outlet.</b></p>		<p><b>When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger it to strong shock.</b></p>
	<p>Failing to do so may cause electric shock, overheating, ignition, shorting, fire, or other dangers, or injury or malfunction. Do not use a damaged AC Charger or damaged AC outlet.</p>		<p><b>Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged.</b></p>
	<p><b>Do not touch AC Charger or AC outlet with wet hands.</b></p>		<p><b>Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger.</b></p>
	<p>May cause electric shock or malfunction.</p>		<p>May cause electric shock or fire.</p>

### **CAUTION**



**Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is finished.**

Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.



**Do not leave AC Charger connected to handset when battery is removed.**

May cause fire or electric shock.

### ■ **Near Electronic Medical Equipment**

- The following information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

### **WARNING**



**If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.**

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.



**When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.**

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.



**Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.**

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.
- Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.



**Keep handset power off in crowded places such as in packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.**

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

# General Notes

## Usage Basics

- As handset uses radio waves, it cannot be used where signals are weak or when it is out of service area. If you move to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. beside/inside a building, in a tunnel, underground or mountain area), calls may be suddenly cut off.
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from loss or alteration of data (Phone Book, mail, images, sound, etc.) stored on your handset, microSD™ or microSDHC™ memory card as a result of accident or malfunction. We recommend you back up important data such as Phone Book entries.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far away as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
  - Eavesdropping:
    - Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Do not trap Strap or other objects when sliding handset open or shut. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may, in some rare cases, affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
  - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
  - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
  - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
- Keep a backup copy of data saved to handset. SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss of data stored on your handset.
- If you use handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery before using handset. During charging, battery may become warm. This is normal and not a defect.
- Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and the condition of Battery (In an extremely hot or cold environment, capacity of battery will be reduced, and service life will also be shorter. Using handset at normal temperatures is recommended).

- Do not charge battery:
  - At an ambient temperature outside of appropriate range (5 to 35° C)
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- When Battery Strength Indicator flashes and Charging Indicator is out, charging is disabled. Ambient temperature may be too high or low. Charge battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35° C.
- When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- Handset's FeliCa reader/writer function uses ultra-weak radio waves not requiring radio licensing.
- FeliCa operates at 13.56 MHz range. Maintain enough distance when using other reader/writers nearby. Be sure to check that other wireless stations operating at the same frequency range are not nearby.
- Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.
- Back up image (Photo/Movie)/sound (Incoming melody, etc.) to a PC. Please note, copy protected files may not be backed up.
- Do not subject Display to excessive force. This may cause damage and lead to malfunction.
- Do not press keys/buttons with excessive force using your nails or other hard objects. This may cause damage and lead to malfunction.
- Stored mail and downloaded data (regardless whether fee-based or free) cannot be transferred from one handset to another when obtaining service or when changing to a different model.
- Do not pull External Device Port cover with excessive force; may cause damage.
- Do not exert excessive force where there is sliding movement when sliding handset open/shut or using handset. Swinging or bending handset may cause malfunction and damage; handle with care.
- Earpiece should be centered over ear. Otherwise, sound may be blocked.
- Sudden change from cold to warm/humid environment may cause condensation inside handset. Using handset in this condition may cause malfunction.
- Do not wind the AC Charger cord around the plug. This may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Prolonged exposure to sound at high volume levels may cause hearing damage. When listening to music, sound may leak from earphones; be mindful of others on trains or in public places.
- Using handset (Music Player, TV, etc.) while walking may be cause for decreased attention, leading to accidents. Always stay alert, especially when crossing a road, at railroad crossings etc.

## General Notes

- When not using the handset for an extended period, remove the battery and store it in a cool, dry place.

### Inside Cars

- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

### Handling

- Keep liquids away from handset. Handset, battery, AC Charger and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use in rain or humid locations (e.g. bathrooms). If worn close to the body, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by water or humidity is not covered by the warranty.
- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent. Abrupt temperature change may form condensation, leading to corrosion or malfunction.
- Use a dry soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth) to wipe handset. Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. Rubbing Display with a dry cloth may scratch the surface. Clean handset carefully using a dry soft cloth for eyeglasses. If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off. Do not use alcohol, solvent, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Occasionally clean the power terminals and the battery terminals with a dry cotton swab or cloth. Soiled terminals may cause poor contacts resulting in power failure and insufficient charging. When cleaning, take care not to deform the terminals.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and battery. Placing handset in a bag packed with many items or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, internal circuit board or battery, and cause malfunction. Close handset before placing inside a bag. Neglecting to do so may cause damage. Such damage is not covered by the warranty, even if there is no external damage.
- Although handset becomes warm while being used or charged, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction, and may cause keys and buttons to be wrongly activated when handset is closed, resulting in malfunction and reduced battery life.
- Do not leave battery removed or uncharged for an extended period of time. Doing so may alter or erase the settings and data you saved. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store empty Battery. Doing so may degrade performance and shorten life of Battery.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.

- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C, and a humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.
- Battery is a consumable item. Replace Battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short even after it is fully charged (depends on conditions of use). Purchase a new battery designated for handset.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C.
- The FeliCa reader/writer function should be used within Japan. Handset's FeliCa reader/writer function complies with wireless standards and you may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- The IC card authentication function should be used within Japan. Handset's IC card authentication function complies with wireless standards and has obtained certification. You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- Do not attach USIM Card with labels or stickers attached to handset. May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert the connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover. Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not attach labels or stickers to the backside of handset's Display. Labels or stickers may catch when handset is opened or closed, resulting in malfunction or breakage.
- Be mindful of One Seg Antenna. When taking calls while viewing TV, take care not to injure persons around you or jab yourself in the eye with Antenna. Retract Antenna when opening/closing handset.

### Camera

- Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).
- Before taking photos/videos of important events (such as a wedding), perform a test to ensure that photos/videos are reproduced properly and sound is recorded clearly.
- Do not use handset to record copyright-protected materials such as books, or materials for which permission has not been given.

### Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.

## General Notes

Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera. The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

## Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.  
Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.  
Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.
- S! Appli, S! Mail, PC Site Browser and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- “SOFTBANK,” SOFTBANK’s equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the “Yahoo!” and “Y!” logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the US.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.
- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- The microSD™ logo and microSDHC™ logo are trademarks.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LAWhen you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.



- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated. Copyright© 1995 - 2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



JBlend™



- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.

- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD. ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.



©2009 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD.

© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All right reserved

- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- TruMedia and Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc. Trumedia, Dialog Clarity, SRS and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

**IrFront™**



For more details, visit “GPL・LGPL等について” at <http://ch-mobile.jp/product/gpl/>

## General Notes

- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.
- BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., and INFOCITY, Inc.
- PhotoSolid<sup>®</sup> is used for image stabilization of still images. MovieSolid<sup>®</sup> is used for image stabilization of videos. PhotoSolid<sup>®</sup> and MovieSolid<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc.
- FrameSolid<sup>™</sup> by Morpho, Inc. is used for the frame interpolation function. FrameSolid<sup>™</sup> is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows Media<sup>®</sup> and Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this guide.
  - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
  - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional operating system or Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional operating system.
- EXILIM is a registered trademark of CASIO COMPUTER CO., LTD.
- ©ATR-Trek Co., Ltd.
- S! Appli are Java<sup>™</sup> supported applications.
- S! Appli supported SoftBank cellular phones are equipped with JBlend<sup>®</sup>, developed by Aplix Corporation and designed to accelerate the processing speed of Java<sup>™</sup> applications.
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

## Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, the following become unavailable:

- TV
- Camera

If the functions mentioned above are activated more than a set number of times while out-of-range, they become unavailable.

Activate the Camera and TV again after moving to a location with signal reception.

## Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law. This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark (㉿) is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

## SAR Certification Information

930CA meet the technical standards set by Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg\*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

\* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.351W/kg for 930CA. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For further information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html> (Japanese)

### SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- \* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.
- \*\*Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.
- \*\*\*Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website:  
<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html>

### European RF Exposure Information

This handset 930CA is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.

These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 2W/kg for 930CA\*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.375W/kg for 930CA.

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much smaller. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:  
<http://www.who.int/emf>

- \* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

## Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

The products "930CA" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:

<http://k-tai.casio.jp/>

## Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.



# Getting Started

<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>	<b>Mobile Manners</b> .....	<b>1-20</b>
Basic Key Operations .....	1-3	Activating Manner Mode.....	1-20
Opening/Closing Handset.....	1-7	<b>Codes</b> .....	<b>1-21</b>
Front Keys.....	1-7	Security Code .....	1-21
<b>Display</b> .....	<b>1-8</b>	Center Access Code.....	1-21
Display Indicators .....	1-8	Network Password.....	1-21
<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>1-10</b>	<b>Other Basic Information</b> .....	<b>1-22</b>
Before Using USIM Card .....	1-10	Checking Battery Level.....	1-22
Other Notes on USIM Cards.....	1-10	My Phone Number.....	1-22
USIM PINs.....	1-11	Checking Network Status.....	1-22
USIM Card Installation .....	1-12	Using Power Save Mode.....	1-23
<b>Battery &amp; AC Charger</b> .....	<b>1-13</b>		
Notes on Battery Charging.....	1-13		
Battery Installation .....	1-13		
Open Port Cover.....	1-15		
Charging Battery.....	1-16		
<b>Power On/Off</b> .....	<b>1-18</b>		
Power On.....	1-18		
Power Off .....	1-19		

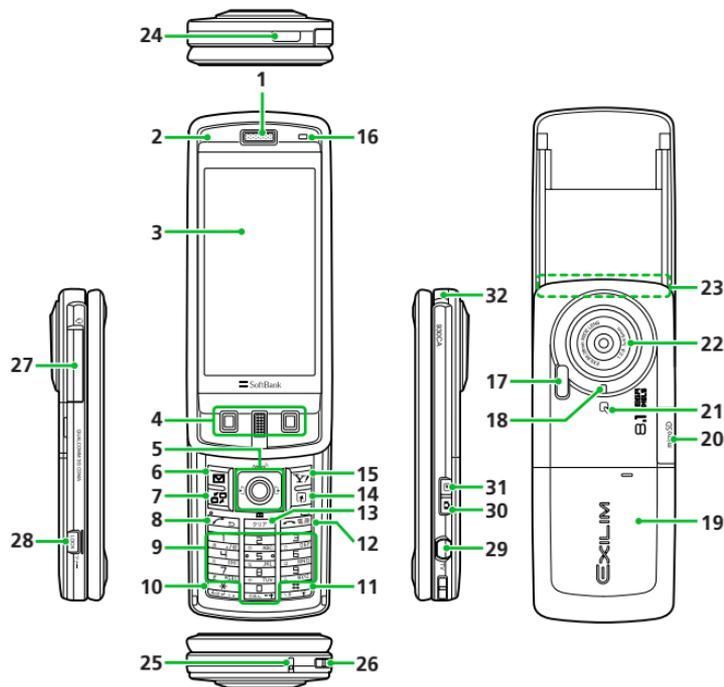
# 1

# Handset Parts

1

Getting Started

© SoftBank 930CA



- 1 Earpiece/Speaker<sup>3</sup>
- 2 Charging Indicator/Illumination
- 3 Display
- 4 Front Keys (Right)  (Top)<sup>4</sup>  
(Center)   
(Left)  (Bottom)
- 5 Multi Selector  & <sup>4</sup>
- 6 Mail Key <sup>4</sup>
- 7 Menu Key <sup>4</sup>
- 8 Send Key <sup>4</sup>
- 9 Keypad  0 - 9<sup>4</sup>
- 10 \* Key <sup>4</sup>
- 11 #/Manner Key <sup>4</sup>
- 12 Power/End Key <sup>4</sup>
- 13 Clear/Back Key <sup>4</sup>
- 14 Shortcut Key <sup>4</sup>
- 15 Yahoo! Keitai Key <sup>4</sup>
- 16 Light Sensor
- 17 Light
- 18 Camera Indicator
- 19 Battery Cover
- 20 Memory Card Slot
- 21 FeliCa Mark
- 22 Camera
- 23 Internal Antenna<sup>1</sup>
- 24 Infrared Port
- 25 Microphone
- 26 Strap Eyelet
- 27 External Device Port<sup>2</sup>

- 28 Lock Key  4
- 29 Shutter Key  4
- 30 Camera Key  4
- 31 Viewer Key  4
- 32 Digital TV Antenna

- 1 For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not put stickers over Internal Antenna.
- 2 Connect AC Charger or supplied Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to use earphone-microphone. See instructions included with Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- 3 Earpiece also functions as speaker. Be careful of ringtone/alarm sounding close by your ear when receiving or ending a call.
- 4 Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.

## Basic Key Operations

### ☉ In Standby

No.	Key/Operations	Description
31		Activate Snap Viewer. <sup>1</sup>
30		Activate Camera in Photo Mode. <sup>1</sup>
	Press and hold 	Activate Camera in BI-DO-RI Mode. <sup>1</sup>
29		Activate TV. <sup>2</sup>
28	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.

- 1 Portrait view when handset open; Landscape view when closed.
- 2 Acts as shutter when using Camera.

### ☉ In Standby (Handset Closed)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
4		Activate/operate Quick Launcher.
28		Lock/unlock Side Keys and Front Keys.
	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.

### ○ In Standby (Handset Open)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
5		Access Shortcuts.
	Press and hold 	Open S! Quick News List.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold 	Open Received Address List.
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold 	Open Sent Address List.
		Open Main Menu.
6		Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold 	Compose a new message.
15		Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold 	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
7		Open Main Menu. Open Task Switch window (when multitasking).

No.	Key/Operations	Description
14		Activate function assigned to key. Default Setting: Schedule
	Press and hold 	Assign a function to key.
8		Answer/make calls. Open Quick List.
13		Play messages on Answering Machine.
	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Answering Machine.
12	Press and hold 	Turn power on/off.
9	Press and hold 	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold 	Activate/deactivate Power Save Mode. • Display is dimmed in Power Save Mode.
	Press and hold 	Set font type, thickness and size.
	Press and hold 	Set Screen Filter on/off. • Display becomes opaque. • Setting returns to off when powered back on.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
9	Press and hold 	Toggle Light on/off.
	Press and hold 	Enter "+" (international access code).
11	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.

### ◎ During Voice Calls (Handset Open)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
5		Increase earpiece volume (alternatively, use Viewer Key).
	Press and hold 	Continuously increase earpiece volume.
		Decrease earpiece volume (alternatively, use Camera Key).
	Press and hold 	Continuously decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
		Open Redial window.
6		Turn handsfree on/off.
7		Open Task Switch window.
14		Display function menu.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
13		Hold call.
12		End call.
11	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode. In Manner Mode, voice sent via microphone is amplified on caller's side.

### ◎ During Voice Calls (Handset Closed)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
31		Increase earpiece volume*.
30		Decrease earpiece volume*.

\* When earphone-microphone attached. Call ends when handset closes and earphone-microphone not attached.

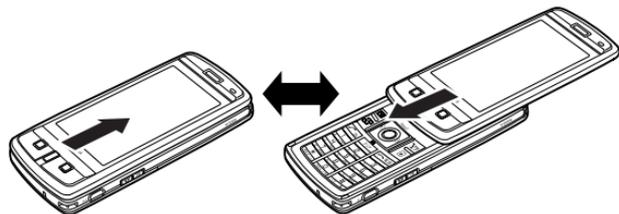
### ◎ During Text Entry

No.	Key/Operations	Description
5		Insert line feed "↵" (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Toggle character entry mode (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode).
15		Switch to pictograph/symbol lists.
	Press and hold 	Access My Pictograms (in S! Mail).
8		Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
13		Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted.
	Press and hold 	Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
10		Enter dakuten (゛) or handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Insert line feed "↵".
	Press and hold 	Select area.
11		Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold 	Paste copied or cut text.

## Opening/Closing Handset



Slide Display open.

Slide Display shut.

### Tip

- Functions activated while handset is closed remain active after opening handset.

### Note

- Opening or closing handset while touching Front Keys or Side Keys may cause malfunction. Set Keypad Lock (press  while handset closed) to prevent malfunction.

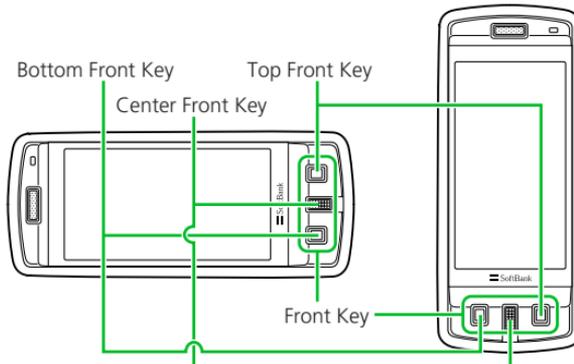
## Front Keys

Use Front Keys to activate/operate Quick Launcher when handset is closed. From Quick Launcher, access Camera, TV, Music Player, etc.

- To use Front Keys in Landscape or Portrait view, position handset as follows.

Landscape View

Portrait View

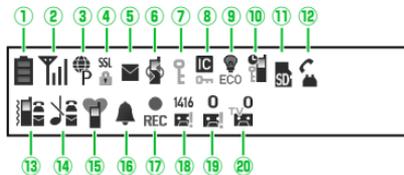


- Use  (Top) or  (Bottom) to scroll through menu then press  to select an item.
- Use  to lock/unlock Front Keys.

### Tip

- In this guide, Front Keys are indicated as follows.  
 Top Front Key:  (Top)  
 Bottom Front Key:  (Bottom)  
 Center Front Key: 

## Display Indicators



- ① Battery Level
- ② Signal Strength
- ③ **OUT** Out of Range
- ④ Emission OFF Mode
- ⑤ USIM Lock Active
- ⑥ Yahoo! Keitai Mode
- ⑦ Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress
- ⑧ Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)
- ⑨ Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission
- ⑩ Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)
- ⑪ SSL Secured Site Connected
- ⑫ Unread Messages
- ⑬ Handset Message Memory Full

- ⑭ USIM SMS Memory Full ( when there are unread messages)
- ⑮ Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full
- ⑯ Software Updated
- ⑰ Dial Lock Active
- ⑱ Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ⑲ Custom Lock Active
- ⑳ Custom Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ㉑ Infrared Transmission
- ㉒ Authenticating IC Card
- ㉓ S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
- ㉔ IC Card Lock Active
- ㉕ Power Save Mode
- ㉖ Screen Filter On ( when Backlight is Off)
- ㉗ Keypad Lock Active (*After Closed, Timer or Lock Key is ON\**)
- ㉘ Memory Card Inserted
- ㉙ Invalid Memory Card Inserted
- ㉚ Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
- ㉛ Accessing Memory Card
- ㉜ Voice Call
- ㉝ Video Call
- ㉞ Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
- ㉟ USB Cable Connected in Communication/microSD Mode

- ㊱ microSD Mode
- ㊲ Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode
- ㊳ USB Cable & Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode
- ㊴ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages
- ㊵ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/ Messages
- ㊶ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
- ㊷ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/ Messages
- ㊸ Manner Mode
- ㊹ Auto Manner Mode Start On
- ㊺ Auto Manner Mode Release On
- ㊻ Alarm Set
- ㊼ Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
- ㊽ TV Timer Recording in Progress
- ㊾ New Messages at Voice Mail Center
- ㊿ Voice Messages on Answering Machine
- ㊿ Video Messages on Answering Machine

\* **Lock Key** is **ON** by default.

### Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:  
**Settings** **Display** **Icons**

## More Features

### Customize

#### Display Settings

- ❖ Wallpaper
- ❖ Display Color Scheme
- ❖ Set Font Type
- ❖ Interface Language
- ❖ Guard from Prying Eyes
- ❖ Display Quality

( P. 14-4)

#### Backlight

- ❖ Set Backlight & Power Saving
- ❖ Set Brightness of Backlight

( P. 14-7)

#### Standby Indicators

- ❖ Enable Indicator Selector

( P. 14-10)

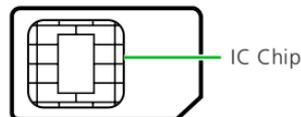
## Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

## Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



## USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

### PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When **PIN1 Code Entry Set** is set to **ON**, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

### PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

### PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

#### Note

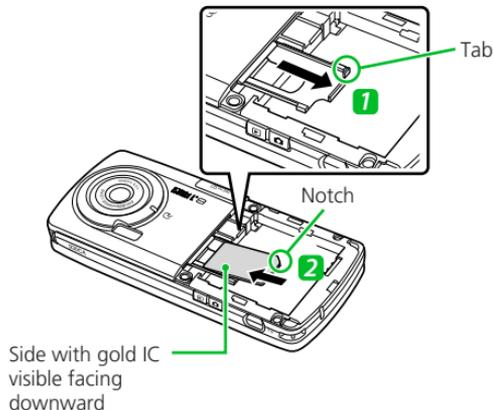
- If PUK1 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled.
- If PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, operations requiring PIN2 entry are all disabled.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

## USIM Card Installation

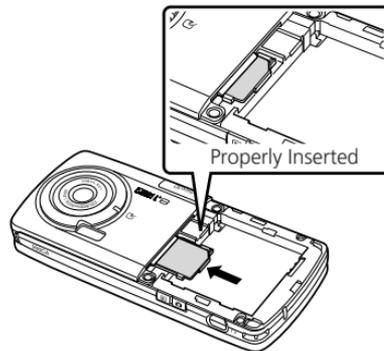
- Remove Battery (P. 1-13) before inserting or removing USIM Card.

### Insertion

- 1 Pull Tray out by catch
- 2 Place USIM Card on tray with gold IC part facing downward, in the orientation shown



- 3 Push Tray all the way in



### Removal

- 1 Pull Tray out by catch and remove USIM Card

### If Tray Detaches

Do not use excessive force to pull Tray; may slide out completely.

If Tray detaches, align Tray horizontally, then push in all the way.

## Notes on Battery Charging

- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).
- If Charging Indicator flashes during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal.

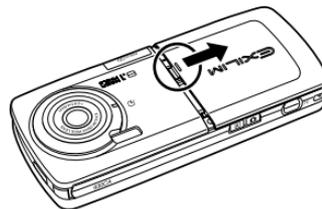


Li-ion00

## Battery Installation

### Insertion

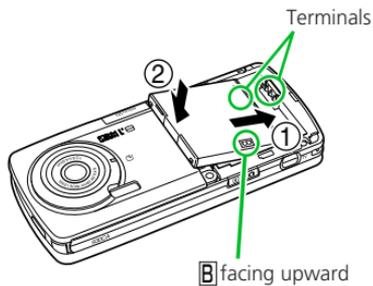
- 1 Press " — " mark and slide off Battery Cover



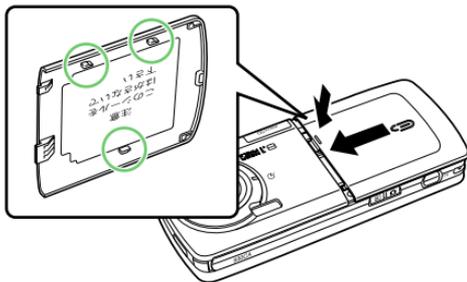
### Note

- Hold handset firmly so handset does not slide open when removing Battery Cover.

- 2 Align terminals and insert in direction shown (①), and then press into handset (②).



- 3 Replace cover



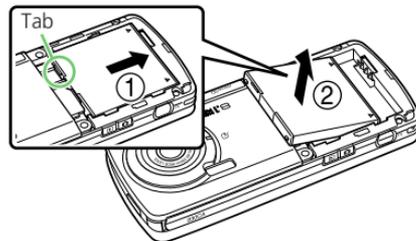
## Note

- Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned, and cause breakage.

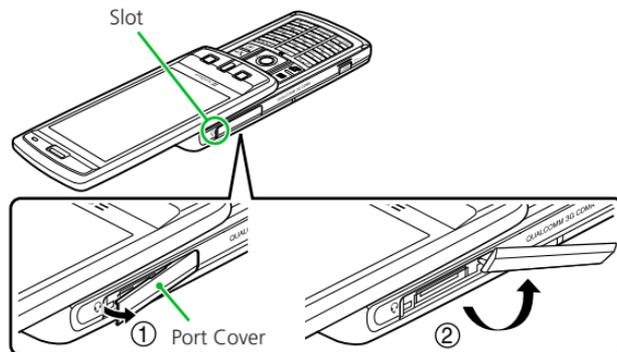
## Removal

- Turn off handset before removing battery.

- 1 Remove battery cover
- 2 Pressing Tab (①), lift out battery (②)



## Open Port Cover



**1** Pull Port Cover (as indicated by arrow ①)

**2** Rotate Port Cover (as indicated by arrow ②)

- Using excessive force may cause damage.
- Keep Cover completely open (as illustrated) while Port is in use.

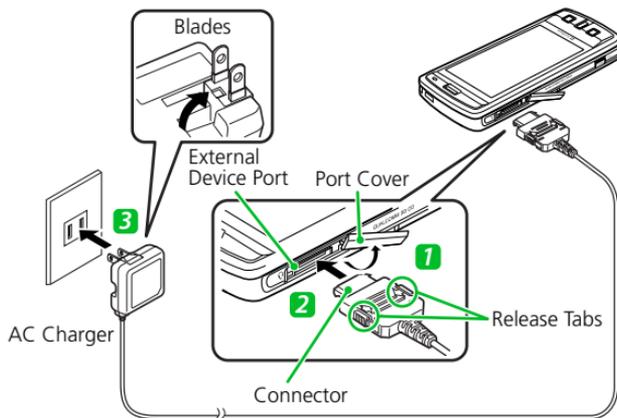
### Note

- When handset is connected to an external device, be cautious of Port Cover. Excessive force may damage it.

## Charging Battery

### Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger "ZTDAA1" (sold separately). In this guide, the ZTDAA1 model AC Charger is referred to as "AC Charger."



#### 1 Open Port Cover

See P. 1-15.

#### 2 Insert Charger connector into External Device Port

#### 3 Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet

Charging Indicator lights while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

#### 4 Disconnect connector from handset

Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.

#### 5 Close Port Cover

#### 6 Unplug Charger from AC Outlet

### Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  go out and **Charge Unusual Stop Charge** appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).
- When Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  are flashing, handset temperature is unsuitable for charging (Temperature Monitoring). Wait until handset cools down.

 **More Features**

 **Customize**

Backlight

❖ Set Backlight during Charging

( P. 14-7)

## Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

### 1 Press and hold



### Tip

- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

### ⊙ Powering Handset On for the First Time (Initial Setup)

Setup prompt appears in Japanese.

Select **NO** and press  to exit.

After changing interface language to English (P. 14-6), restart handset and perform setup procedure as follows.

### 1 [Initial Settings] window ▶▶ YES ▶▶

### 2 Auto ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a time zone ▶▶

- **To Manually Enter Date & Time**  
▶▶ **Manual (Date Time Set)** ▶▶   
▶▶ Select a time zone ▶▶  ▶▶  
Enter date and time ▶▶ 

### 3 Enter Security Code (9999) ▶▶ ▶▶ Enter new Security Code ▶▶ ▶▶ YES ▶▶

### 4 Select a font size ▶▶

- **When *Separate Setting* is Selected**

Set a font size for each function window (P. 14-6).

### 5 [Keypad Sound Setting] window ▶▶ ON or OFF ▶▶

### Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears when all the initial setup items have been set.
- The default Security Code is 9999.

### ⊙ Retrieving Network Information

When , ,  or  is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

### Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings:  
 ▶▶ Settings ▶▶  ▶▶ Connection Settings ▶▶  ▶▶ Retrieve NW Info ▶▶  ▶▶ YES ▶▶ 

### 📧 Welcome Mail

You will find a Welcome mail from CASIO in Inbox at time of purchase.

#### Tip

- Packet transmission fees apply when accessing links in Welcome mail.
- Welcome mail can be deleted but after initializing handset, it will reappear in Inbox.

## Power Off

### 1 Press and hold

Handset shuts down.

### More Features

#### Customize

##### Clock

- ❖ Hide Clock
  - ❖ Set Auto Time Adjustment
  - ❖ Manually Adjust Time
  - ❖ Summer Time
  - ❖ Time Zone (Sub Clock)
  - ❖ Hide Sub Clock
  - ❖ Summer Time (Sub Clock)
  - ❖ Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)
- (👉 P. 14-2)

##### Auto Power On/Off

- ❖ Set Auto Power On/Off
- (👉 P. 14-3)

##### Display Settings

- ❖ Set a Wake-up Image
  - ❖ Set a Wake-up Message
  - ❖ Set Font Sizes Collectively
  - ❖ Set Font Size for Each Function Window
- (👉 P. 14-4)

##### Sounds

- ❖ Set Handset Open/Close Sound
- (👉 P. 14-14)

##### Key

- ❖ Set Key Sound Off

(👉 P. 14-39)

Use your handset responsibly.

Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

## Activating Manner Mode

Most handset sounds are muted in Manner Mode.

### 1 Press and hold

#### ■ To Cancel Manner Mode

▶▶ Press and hold 

### Note

- When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.

### Tip

- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold  to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Set or cancel Manner Mode by pressing and holding .

## More Features

### Customize

#### Manner Mode

- ❖ Set Manner Mode Type
- ❖ Configure Original Manner Mode
- ❖ Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start
- ❖ Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release
- ❖ Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

( P. 14-13)

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

## Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.
- Security Code is referred to as 操作暗証番号 (operation code) on SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

### Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

## Changing Security Code

- 1  » **Settings** »  » **Security** »  » **Change Security Code** »
- 2 **Enter current Security Code** »
- 3 **Enter new Security Code** »  » **YES** »

## Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

## Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

## Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

### Battery Level Indicator

Battery Level indicator appears at top of Display.

- Sufficient
- Low
- Almost out. Charge immediately.
- (Flashing) Charging

### Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

- 1 ■ >> **Settings** >> ■ >> **Other Settings** >> ■ >> **Battery Level** >> ■

A large battery level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.

Three short beeps: Sufficient  
Two short beeps: Low  
One short beep: Almost out.  
Charge immediately.

### Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

### ○ When Battery Is Empty

*Recharge Battery* appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

## My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

- 1 ■ >> 0

Account Details appear.

### ■ Add Other Information

- >> [P] >> **Edit** >> Enter Security Code >> ■ >> Select an item >> ■ >> Enter information >> ■ >> [X]

### ■ View All Information

- >> [P] >> **Display All Data** >> ■ >> Enter Security Code >> ■ >> [X] to switch tabs

### ■ Reset Account Details

- >> [P] >> **Reset** >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■

## Checking Network Status

Check Network Status to confirm if voice calls and/or packet transmission is available.

- 1 ■ >> **Settings** >> ■ >> **Other Settings** >> ■ >> **Network Status** >> ■

Network information appears.

Dialing	Packet Transmission	Description
not available	not available	Voice calls/packet transmission not possible.
available	not available	Voice calls possible, packet transmission not possible.
not available	available	Voice calls not possible, packet transmission possible.

Dialing	Packet Transmission	Description
available	available	Voice calls/packet transmission possible.

“Out of Service Area” appears when out of range.

### Note

- Display Settings set during Power Save Mode remain, even after Power Save Mode is deactivated.

## Using Power Save Mode

When set to Power Save Mode, light, sound, and Display settings are modified to decrease battery consumption.

### 1 Press and hold

Power Save Mode is set, and “ ECO” appears.

#### ■ Canceling

▶▶ Press and hold 

### Tip

- Power Save Mode is canceled when power is turned off and on again.





# Basic Operations

<b>Menu Operations</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>	<b>Phone Book</b> .....	<b>2-19</b>
Accessing Handset Functions.....	2-2	Overview .....	2-19
Shortcuts/Notifications .....	2-5	Creating Phone Book Entries .....	2-20
Navigating through Menus .....	2-7	Using Phone Book .....	2-21
<b>Multi Function</b> .....	<b>2-9</b>	Phone Book Settings .....	2-22
Activating Another Function.....	2-9	<b>S! Addressbook Back-up</b> .....	<b>2-26</b>
Toggling Functions .....	2-10	Overview .....	2-26
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	<b>2-11</b>	Using S! Addressbook Back-up .....	2-26
Overview.....	2-11	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>2-28</b>
Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode....	2-13	Main Menu.....	2-28
Editing Text .....	2-15	Shortcuts .....	2-28
Editing Templates .....	2-15	Text Entry .....	2-29
Using Dictionaries .....	2-16	Templates.....	2-30
Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode....	2-16	Dictionaries .....	2-30
Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode ..	2-16	Phone Book .....	2-31
		S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-33

## 2



## Accessing Handset Functions

- In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

### From Main Menu

Press to open Main Menu. Use to select an item and press to open sub menus.



Main Menu

### Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

## Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

### ◎ Softkeys

- : Open Mail menu.
- (Press and hold): Compose a new message.
- : Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
- (Press and hold): Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- : Access the function assigned to the key.
- (Press and hold): Assign a function to the key.

### ◎ Multi Selector

- : Access Shortcuts.
- : Open Phone Book Search window.
- : Open Received Calls window.
- : Open Redial window.

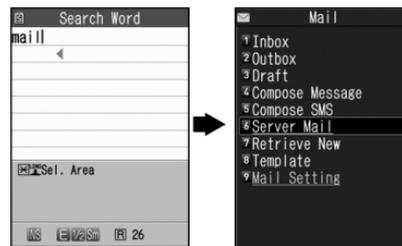
## Keyword Search

Enter keywords to search for menu items.

1

2 Enter keyword

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding results appear.

3 Select an item

### ■ Toggling Multiple Items

Press to toggle items.



## From Quick Launcher

Activate Quick Launcher when handset is closed to access TV, Snap Viewer, Movie Viewer, Photo, Movie, or MUSIC.

**1** (Top), or (Bottom)



Quick Launcher

**■ Returning to Standby**



### Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after a period of inactivity.

**2** (Top) or (Bottom) to select an icon

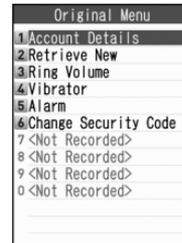
## Menu Items

Icon	Function
	Activate Camera in Photo Mode (P. 7-8)
	Activate Snap Viewer (P. 7-19)
	Activate TV (P. 8-7)
	Activate Movie Viewer (P. 7-21)
	Activate Camera in Movie Mode (P. 7-10)
	Activate Music Player (activates in Portrait view) (P. 9-6).

## From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

**1**



Press to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.



## Enter Menu Item Number

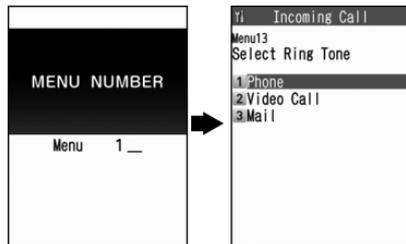
Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to *Standard*.

- See P. 15-21 for menu item numbers.
- See P. 2-28 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access **Select Ring Tone**  
(menu no. 13)

1

2





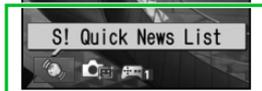
## Shortcuts/ Notifications

Add functions to Shortcut Icons and use them as shortcuts.

Notifications appear on desktop to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information.

The following shortcuts are set by default.

- S! Quick News List
- Camera (BI-DO-RI)
- S! Appli (モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) (Japanese))



## Shortcut Icons

Icon	Function
	S! Quick News List
	Camera (BI-DO-RI)
	S! Appli
	Call Phone Number
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody
	Show Image
	Play Video

Icon	Function
	Inbox Folder
	Camera (Photo)
	Camera (Serial) For continuous shooting.
	Camera (Movie)
	Schedule
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	TV



Icon	Function
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Original Menu
	PC Site Browser
	Books
	Play/Erase Msg.
	Play/Erase VC Msg.

### Ⓞ Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
	Missed Calls

Icon	Function/Information
	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
	Voice Mail
	New Messages
	Failed Alarms
	Missed TV Programs
	Timer Recording Finished
	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
	Software Update

Icon	Function/Information
	USB Mode Communication
	Network Re-search
	New S! Info Channel
	New S! Info Channel Receive Failure
	New Weather Info.
	Weather Info. Receive Failure
	Content Keys Acquired

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions or information. Answering Machine and Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back.



## Adding Shortcuts

Add up to 15 icons per theme. Select from three themes.

- 1 From a function >>  >> **Add Shortcut Icon** >>    
 (>> **YES** >> )

## Accessing Shortcuts & Notifications

- 1 



Shortcuts

- 2  to select an icon >> 

### ■ Scrolling Shortcuts

- >> 

### ■ Changing Themes

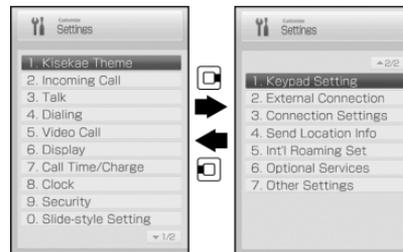
- >>  >> **Change Shortcut** >> 

- Select a theme >>  >> **YES** >> 

## Navigating through Menus

### Scrolling Pages

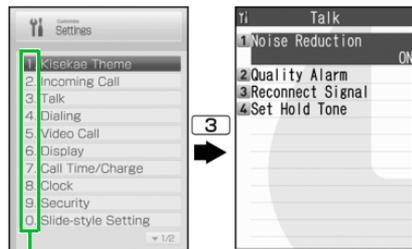
Use  or  to scroll next/previous pages.





## Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Menu Numbers

## Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press **[Back]** to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press **[Home]** to return to Standby.

● May not apply to all functions/windows.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Main Menu

- ❖ Change Main Menu Theme
- ❖ Switch to Simple Menu
- ❖ Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(👉 P. 2-28)

#### Shortcuts

- ❖ Delete Notifications
- ❖ Edit Title of a Shortcut
- ❖ Change Icon Image
- ❖ Check Icon Information
- ❖ Change icon order
- ❖ Delete Shortcuts
- ❖ Reset Shortcuts
- ❖ Show/Hide Shortcuts

(👉 P. 2-28)

### Customize

#### Menu Display Settings

- ❖ List View and Details View
- ❖ Set Main Menu Theme
- ❖ Change Icon Design (Original Theme)
- ❖ Change Background (Original Theme)
- ❖ Reset Original Theme Settings

- ❖ Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- ❖ Add a Menu Item to Original Menu (👉 P. 14-9)

#### Key

- ❖ Set Key Sound Off
- ❖ Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key (👉 P. 14-39)

#### Shortcuts

- ❖ Set Shortcut Theme
- ❖ Change Icon Design of a Theme
- ❖ Change Order of Icons of a Theme
- ❖ Copy Icons to Another Theme
- ❖ Move Icons to Another Theme
- ❖ Delete Icons of a Theme
- ❖ Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation (👉 P. 14-7)



## Multi Function

Activate up to three functions simultaneously. Activate one function per group at one time (except TV & MUSIC Group).

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Keitai Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera, Snap Viewer, Movie Viewer
TV & MUSIC Group	TV, MUSIC

- See P. 15-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Currently active functions are indicated by task indicators in Task Indicator Area. To switch to a different function, select the corresponding task indicator.



Task Indicator Area

- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

## Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

**1** While using a function >>

**2** >> Select another function >>

### ■ Mail Function

After step 1 >>

### ■ To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal

After step 1 >>

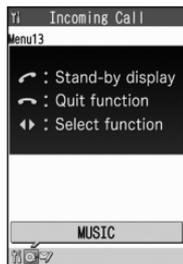
### ■ To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

After step 1 >>



## Toggleing Functions

1 When multiple functions are active >>



Task Switch Window

### ■ Switching Functions

>> to select a task indicator >>

### ■ Opening Main Menu

>>

### ■ Returning to Standby

>>

Press in Standby to reopen Task Switch window.

### ■ Ending Multi Function

>> >> *Quit Selected* or *Quit All Function* >>

### Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold to end Multi Function and return to Standby.



# Text Entry

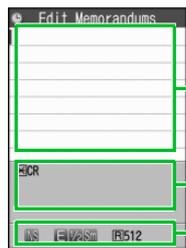
Handset has three text input methods: 5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

● This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

## Overview

### Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



Character Entry Pane

Guide Pane

Status Pane

Text Entry Window

### Character Entry Pane

	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

### Guide Pane

▲▼ CHG	☐ to convert characters
▲▼ All ▲▼ Find	☐ to search Phone Book
◀▶ ▲▼ Area	☑ to specify a text range to copy/cut
☒ CR	☒ to insert line feed
☒ Sel. Area	Press and hold ☒ to select area of text to copy/cut
☒ A/a	☒ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜)
☒ AA → aa	☒ to cancel Caps Lock mode
☒ aa → Aa	☒ to set Shift mode
☒ Aa → AA	☒ to set Caps Lock mode
☒ Paste	Press and hold ☒ to paste copied or cut text
↶ Back	☒ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え→う)

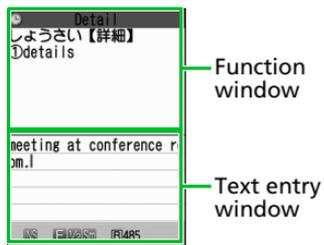
### Status Pane

2 7	Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
漢 力 E 123	Character entry mode
☒	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-30)
V1 V2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
Shift CAPS LOCK	Shift/Caps Lock mode
R	Bytes remaining for text entry.
In	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message)



## Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

### Switching Windows

Press  and select *Change Window* to switch windows.

## Changing Text Input Methods

- 1 [Text Entry] window 
  - ▶ **CHG Input Method** 
  - ▶ **Select a text input method** 

Alternatively, press and hold .

## Toggling Character Entry Modes

- 1 [Text Entry] window 
  - Press  to toggle entry modes.
  - Kanji/hiragana ▶ Katakana ▶
  - Alphanumerics ▶ Numbers

### Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press  to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

## Interruptions during Text Entry

### When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge Battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry.

Text may not be saved depending on the function.

### When is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press  to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press .

### When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.



## Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-11.

## Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

### Using Conversion

Enter a character and Conversion function suggests words starting with that character. Conversion also suggests word selection for words to follow.

Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Conversion.

### Auto Cursor

If no key is pressed for a set time during text entry, cursor moves to the right.

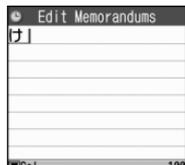
See P. 14-39 for how to switch cursor movement speed.

<Example> Entering “携帯電話”

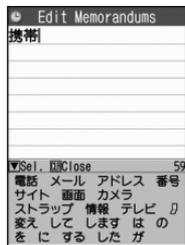
### 1 [Text Entry] window >>

#### 2 (four times)

“け” is entered in Character Entry Pane. Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け” in Guide Pane.



### 2 [Text Entry] window >>



“携帯” appears in Character Entry Pane.

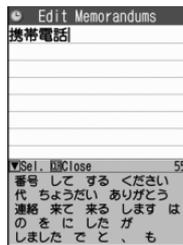
A suggestion list of words that follow “携帯” appears in Guide Pane.

### When Required Word Does Not Appear

>> クリア

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.

### 3 [Text Entry] window >> Select “電話” >> [Done]



### To Exit Suggestion List

>> クリア or [Done]

### Tip

- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold クリア to delete an added word from the suggestion list.



## ① Converting Hiragana

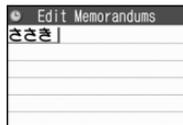
If the required suggestion does not appear or conversion is set to Off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木”

### 1 [Text Entry] window >>

3 (once) >> [ ] >>

3 (once) >> 2 (twice)



■ To Delete Last Input Character

>> [クリア]

■ To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It

>> [ ]

### 2 [ ] >> [ ]

■ To Reconvert to a Different Word

>> [ ] >> Select a word

■ To Change Conversion Range

>> [ ]

## Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜)

<Example> Entering “が”

### 1 [ ] window >>

2 (once) >> [ ] >> [ ]

## Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ” to “つ”

### 1 [ ] window >>

4 (three times) >> [ ] >>



## Pictographs & Symbols

### 1 [ ]



### 2 Select a pictograph/symbol

>> [ ]

■ To Toggle Pictograph/Symbol Categories

>> [ ] or [ ]

■ To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry

>> [ ]

### 3 [クリア]

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

## Emoticons

### 1 [ ] >> Face Mark >> [ ]

### 2 Select an emoticon >> [ ]

## Common Phrases (Templates)

### 1 [ ] >> Common Phrases >>



### 2 Select a folder >> [ ] >>

Select a phrase >> [ ] (twice)



## Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window **»»**  
Enter hiragana **»»**  **»»**  
Select a character **»»** 

## Editing Text

### Deletion & Correction

- 1 [Text Entry] window **»»**  
Move cursor to the left of the character to delete **»»**  

- To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor  
**»»** Press and hold 
- To Delete Entire Text  
**»»** Move cursor to the end of text  
**»»** Press and hold 

- 2 Position cursor **»»** Enter correct characters

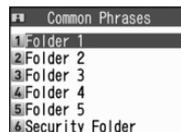
### Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

- 1 [Text Entry] window **»»**   
**»» Copy or Cut** **»»** 
- 2 Move cursor to beginning of characters **»»** 
- 3 Move cursor to end of characters **»»** 
- 4 Position cursor **»»**  **»»**  
**Paste** **»»** 

## Editing Templates

- 1  **»» Own Data** **»»**  **»»**  
**Common Phrases** **»»** 



Templates (Common phrases) Window

- 2 Select a folder **»»** 



Templates List Window

- When Security Folder Selected  
**»»** Enter Security Code **»»** 
- 3 Select an entry **»»**  **»»**  
Enter text **»»** 



## Using Dictionaries

### Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

1 **Own Data**   
**Own Dictionary**



Own Dictionary Window

2 **<New>** **Enter word**  
**Enter reading**

■ **To Check Saved Words**  
**Select a word**

### Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 15-12.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-13).

<Example> Entering “キャンプ”

1 (き)   
 (change to lower case mode)  
 (や)   
 (change to upper case mode)  
 (ん)   
 (ふ) (°)

2

#### Tip

- Pressing also adds dakuten (°) and handakuten (°) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.

### Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

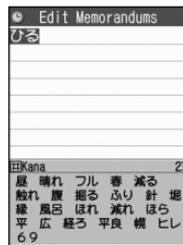
- For key assignment, see P. 15-13.
- When character entry mode is “Number,” 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering “春”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

1 [Text Entry] window

Conversions for the key combination appear.





## ■ To Change Conversion Range



## ■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists



## ■ Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists



## 2 [Text Entry] window >>



Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

## ■ To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List



For example, if you specify “はる,” then “張る,” “貼る” and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

## ■ To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List



For example, if you specify “はる,” then “春休み,” “遥か” and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

## ■ To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry



## 3

## Re-entering Words

Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

<Example> Entering “らんらんと”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

## 1 [Text Entry] window >>

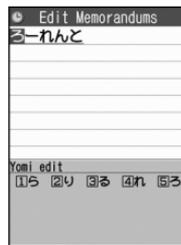
(row ら) >> (row わ) >>

(row ら) >> (row わ)

>> (row た)

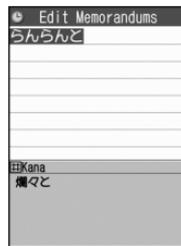
“らんらんと” does not appear in suggestion list.

## 2



Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row ら appear.

## 3 (ら) >> (ん) >> (ら) >> (ん) >> (と)





### ■ If No Correction is Necessary

▶▶ to move cursor to the next character

### ■ To End Re-entering Word

▶▶

The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.

4

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Text Entry

- ❖ Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- ❖ Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- ❖ Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- ❖ Undo Last Operation
- ❖ Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- ❖ Overwrite & Insert Modes
- ❖ Insert Line Feed
- ❖ Input a Space
- ❖ Use Dictionary
- ❖ Quote Text
- ❖ Use Kuten Codes

( P. 2-29)

#### Templates

- ❖ Edit a Folder Name
- ❖ Reset a Folder Name
- ❖ Edit Templates
- ❖ Reset Templates

( P. 2-30)

#### Dictionaries

- ❖ Edit Entries

- ❖ Delete Entries

( P. 2-30)

### Customize

#### Text Entry

- ❖ Set Text Input Method
- ❖ Set Conversion
- ❖ Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- ❖ Clear Learning History
- ❖ Change Font Size
- ❖ Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode

( P. 14-39)



## Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

### Phone Book Data & Settings

#### Contact & Personal Information

- FN • N • P Name & Reading
- GR Group
- 4 Phone Numbers
- 3 E-mail Addresses
- Address
- 📅 Birthday
- 📄 Memo
- 🖼 Still Image
- No Entry Number

#### Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Incoming Image
- Illumination
- Vibration
- Outgoing Message

#### Others

- Secret Data



### Phone Book Usage Examples

#### Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).

#### Quick List

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Quick List (P. 3-12).

#### Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-7).

When you make calls or write messages, specify phone numbers or addresses from Phone Book.

### ● Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/alterd Phone Book data.



## Creating Phone Book Entries

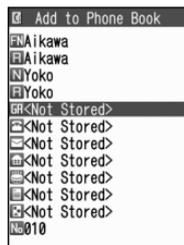
<Example>

Enter a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specify a group

1 >> **Phone Book** >> >> >> **Add to Phone Book** >> >> **Phone** >>

2 >> >> Enter last name >> >> Check reading >> >> >> >> Enter first name >> >> Check reading >>

Reading is entered automatically.  
Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 >> >> Select a group >>

4 >> >> Enter phone number >> >> Select an icon >>

■ To Save Additional Numbers  
Select <Not Stored> and repeat the same step.

5 >> >> Enter e-mail address >> >> Select an icon >>

■ To Save Additional Addresses  
Select <Not Stored> and repeat the same step.

6

### Setting Incoming Image

1 [Phone Book Entry] window >> >>

2 **Select Image** >> >> Select a folder >> >> Select a still image >>

■ To Capture an Image with Camera  
>> **Photo Mode** >> >> Capture image >>

■ To Cancel Selected Image  
>> **Release This** >>

### Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from the following functions:

- Received calls
- Redial
- Receives/Sent Address List
- Yahoo! Keitai
- Phone Number Entry window
- Dialed Calls
- Text Reader

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

1 >> Select a record >> >> **Add to Phone Book** >> >> **Phone** >>

2 **Add** >> >> Search Phone Book >> Select an entry >> (twice)

Phone Book Entry window with the phone number automatically entered opens.



■ To Save As a New Entry

▶▶ **New** ▶▶

**3** Enter other items ▶▶ ▶▶

**YES** ▶▶

## Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery is empty or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

**1** ▶▶ **Phone Book** ▶▶ ▶▶

▶▶ **Add to Phone Book**

▶▶ ▶▶ **Phone** ▶▶ ▶▶

**Recall** ▶▶

■ To Save As a New Entry

▶▶ **New** ▶▶

**2** Enter each item ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES**

▶▶

### Tip

- Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

## Using Phone Book

### Dialing from Phone Book

**1** ▶▶ **Phone Book** ▶▶



Phone Book Entry List Window

■ To Dial the First Phone Number

▶▶

**2** or to switch tabs ▶▶

to select an entry ▶▶



Phone Book Entry Details Window

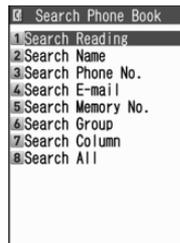
**3** to select a phone number ▶▶ or

■ Video Call

▶▶

### Specifying a Search Method

**1**



Phone Book Search Window

**2** Select a search method ▶▶

#### Search Reading:

Enter a reading and press .

#### Search Name:

Enter a name and press .

#### Search Phone No.:

Enter a phone number and press .



#### Search E-mail:

Enter an e-mail address and press

#### Search Memory No.:

Enter three-digit entry number.

#### Search Group:

Select a group to view saved entries.

#### Search Column:

Press a key ( - or ) to access the tab corresponding to that key.

#### Search All:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List Window

#### Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by .

## Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

- Access Phone Book from Received Calls

**1** >> >> **Look-up Phone Book** >>

- Access Phone Book from Dialed Calls

**1** >> **Own Data** >> >> **Dialed Calls** >> >> >> **Look-up Phone Book** >>

- Access Phone Book from Redial

**1** >> >> **Look-up Phone Book** >>

- Access Phone Book from Received Address List

**1** Press and hold >> >> **Look-up Phone Book** >>

- Access Phone Book from Sent Address List

**1** Press and hold >> >> **Look-up Phone Book** >>

## Phone Book Settings

### Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

#### Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibration (Incoming Calls)
- Vibration (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)



## ○ To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

- 1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window to select a phone number **Ring Tone/Image**
- 2 **Voice Call (Recv.)**
- 3 **Ring Tone** **Select a ringtone type** ( **Select a folder** **Select a ringtone**
  - To Cancel Custom Settings
    - ▶ Select an item

## ○ To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

- 1 [Phone Book Entry List] window **Group Setting**
- 2 Select a group **Ring Tone/Image**
- 3 **Mail (Recv.)**
- 4 **Illumination** **Select a pattern**
  - To Cancel Custom Settings
    - ▶ Select an item

### Note

- Custom settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

## Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

- 1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window to select a phone number **Restrictions**
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select a restriction type

### Restrict Dialing:

Restrict outgoing calls to all numbers except a specified number. To call that number, you need to dial from Phone Book.

### Call Rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

### Call Acceptation:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

### ■ To Cancel Restriction

- ▶ Select a restriction type with "★"

**Ⓞ When Restrict Dialing is Set**

The following operations are disabled:

- Dialing by Keypad
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book (except: calling specified number in Phone Book)

**Tip**

- When *Restrict Dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Restrict Dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled. Cancel *Restrict Dialing* to edit or delete.

**Setting Entries as Secret**

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries by setting them as secret data.

- Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-9).

**1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window**

**Set Secret**


**To Cancel Secret Setting**  
 **Release Secret** 

**Tip**

- Phone Book entries saved in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only Mode are automatically set as secret.
- If a Phone Book entry that has been saved to Quick List is set as secret, the entry is canceled from Quick List.

**Managing USIM Phone Book**

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

**1**  **Tools**  **USIM Operation**  **Enter Security Code** 

**2** **Copy**  **Phone** → **USIM or USIM** → **Phone**  **Phone Book** 

**3** **Search Phone Book**

**4** **Select an entry** 

Repeat this step to specify other entries.

**5**  **YES** 



## Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- You must end copying of Phone Book entries to make/receive calls or send/receive messages.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Creating Entries

- ❖ Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo
  - ❖ Save Birthday
  - ❖ Change Entry Number
- (👉 P. 2-31)

#### Phone Book Search

- ❖ Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window
- ❖ Change Font Size
- ❖ Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- ❖ Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

- ❖ Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book
- (👉 P. 2-31)

#### Managing Phone Book

- ❖ Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
  - ❖ Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
  - ❖ Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
  - ❖ Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
  - ❖ Check Number of Phone Book Entries
  - ❖ Edit a Phone Book Entry
  - ❖ Copy a Phone Book Entry
  - ❖ Delete Entries
  - ❖ Delete Items from an Entry
  - ❖ Delete an Entry from USIM Card
- (👉 P. 2-32)

### Customize

#### Phone Book

- ❖ Set Preferred Search Method
  - ❖ Change Group Name
- (👉 P. 14-16)



## Overview

Back up handset Phone Book to server.

- Separate subscription required.
- See SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) for details.

### Note

- Fully charge battery beforehand.
- Packet transmission fees are incurred for synchronizing, backing up or downloading.
- Be careful when selecting synchronization direction. Otherwise newest information may be deleted.
- All data in the server Phone Book will be deleted if Synchronize, Sync From Client, or Backup is performed after deleting all data in handset Phone Book.
- All data in handset Phone Book will be deleted if Synchronize, Sync From Server, or Restore is performed after deleting all data in the server's Phone Book.
- The following Phone Book items are not synchronized. Note that using Restore will not delete all Phone Book settings.  
Ringtone  
Vibrator  
Illumination/Images

## Using S! Addressbook Back-up

### Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to Phone Book backed up on server and bring it up to date with handset's Phone Book.

- The first time you synchronize will be in *Synchronize* regardless of the setting.
- Synchronization can be any of the following types.

Synchronize	Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book. Both Phone Books are synced with the newest information.
Sync from Client	Copy updated information to server Phone Book.
Sync from Server	Copy update information to handset Phone Book.



Backup	Back up handset Phone Book to server (note that Server Phone Book is deleted).
Restore	Restore server Phone Book to handset (note that handset Phone Book is deleted).

**1** **Tools** **S!**  
**Addressbook Back-up**



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

**2** **Start Sync** **Enter Security Code**

**3** **Select type of synchronization** **YES**  
  
Synchronization starts.  
Synchronization results appear after completion.

**4**

## Checking Synchronize Log

**1** [S! Addressbook Back-up] window **Sync Log**   
 **Select an item**

## More Features

### Advanced

S! Addressbook Back-up  
❖ Delete Synchronize Log

( P. 2-33)

### Customize

S! Addressbook Back-up  
❖ Set Auto Synchronize  
❖ Check Auto Synchronize Settings

( P. 14-16)



## Main Menu

### Start Here

[Main Menu] ..... P. 2-2

#### Change Main Menu Theme

[Main Menu] >> [Icon] >> Select a pattern >> [Enter] (>> YES or NO >> [Enter])

#### Switch to Simple Menu

[Main Menu] >> [Icon] >> **Simple Menu** >> [Enter] (>> YES or NO >> [Enter])

In Simple Menu, font size is larger and menu options are limited to basic ones.

#### Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

[Main Menu] >> [Icon] >> Select a theme >> [Enter]

Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

## Shortcuts

### Delete Notifications

>> Press and hold [Enter]

Some notifications may not disappear depending on the type.

### Edit Title of a Shortcut

>> Select an icon >> [Enter] >> **Edit Title** >> [Enter] >> Enter title >> [Enter]

### Change Icon Image

>> Select an icon >> [Enter] >> **CHG Icon Image** >> [Enter] >> **Select Icon Image** >> [Enter] >> Select a folder >> [Enter] >> Select a file >> [Enter]

To reset icon image, select *Default Icon Image* and press [Enter].

### Check Icon Information

>> Select an icon >> [Enter] >> **Icon Info Setting** >> [Enter]

### Change icon order

>> Select an icon >> [Enter] >> **Sort** >> [Enter] >> YES >> [Enter] >> [Enter] to select a position >> [Enter]

### Delete Shortcuts

>> Select an icon >> [Enter] >> **Delete** >> [Enter]

- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> [Enter] >> YES >> [Enter]
- To select *Delete selected* >> **Delete selected** >> [Enter] >> Select icons >> [Enter] >> [Enter] >> YES >> [Enter]
- To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> [Enter] >> YES >> [Enter]

### Reset Shortcuts

>> [Enter] >> **Reset Shortcut** >> [Enter] >> YES >> [Enter]



#### Show/Hide Shortcuts

**Display Setting**
  
**Display always** or **Display at Use**

When **Display at Use** is set, shortcuts only appear when you press in Standby.

## Text Entry

### Start Here

[Text Entry] window ..... P. 2-11

### Functions Before Entering Text

#### Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry] window
 


**Lower Case** or **Upper Case**

#### Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry] window
 


**Single-Byte** or **Double-Byte**

### Functions While Entering Text

#### Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry] window
 
 Input a character

This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

#### Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry] window
 
 Press and hold

#### Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry] window
 


**Jump**
**To Beginning** or **To End**

#### Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry] window
 


**Overwrite** or **Insert**

Text entry windows always open in **Insert** mode.

#### Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry] window

Press to add a space at the end of text.

#### Input a Space

[Text Entry] window
 


**Space**

Press to add a space at the end of text.

#### Use Dictionary

[Text Entry] window
 




**Refer Dic.**
**Enter Word**
**Enter word**
**Select a dictionary**
**Select a word**
**Read descriptions of the word**

- To Enter a Word from Search History
  - Reference History**
**Select a word**
**Select a dictionary**
**Select a word**
**Read descriptions of the word**



#### Quote Text

[Text Entry] window >> [P] >>

**Quote Data** >> [■]

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry >> **Quote Phonebook** >> [■] >> Search Phone Book >> Select a data item to quote text from >> [■] >> [✉]
- To Quote from Account Details >> **Account Details** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> Select a data item >> [■] >> [✉]
- To Scan Text by Text Reader >> **Text Reader** >> [■] >> Scan text with camera >> [Y]
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader >> **Bar Code Reader** >> [■] >> Scan a bar code with camera >> [■]

#### Use Kuten Codes

[Text Entry] window >> [P] >>

**Kuten Code** >> [■] >> Enter kuten codes (P. 15-14)

## Templates

### Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases)] window ..... P. 2-15

[Templates List] window ..... P. 2-15

#### Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window >> Select a folder >> [P] >>

**Edit Folder Name** >> [■] >> Enter folder name >> [■]

#### Reset a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window >> Select a folder >> [P] >>

**Reset Name** >> [■] >> YES >> [■]

#### Edit Templates

[Templates List] window >> Select a template >> [P] >> **Edit** >> [■] >>

Edit phrase >> [■]

#### Reset Templates

[Templates List] window >> Select a template >> [P]

- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> [■] >> YES >> [■]
- To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> YES >> [■]

## Dictionaries

### Start Here

[Own Dictionary] window ..... P. 2-16

#### Own Dictionary

#### Edit Entries

[Own Dictionary] window >> Select an entry >> [✉] >> Edit word >> [■] >> Edit reading >> [■]



## Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary] window >>>  
 Select an entry >>> [P] >>> **Delete** >>>

- To select *Delete This*  
 >>> **Delete This** >>>  >>> **YES** >>>
  - To select *Delete selected*  
 >>> **Delete selected** >>>  >>> Select entries >>>  >>> [E] >>> **YES** >>>
  - To select *Delete All*  
 >>> **Delete All** >>>  >>> Enter Security Code >>>  >>> **YES** >>>

## Phone Book

### Start Here

[Phone Book Entry] window ...	P. 2-20
[Phone Book Entry List] window	..... P. 2-21
[Phone Book Entry Details] window	..... P. 2-21
[Phone Book Search] window	..... P. 2-21

## Creating Entries

### Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo

[Phone Book Entry] window >>> [H]  
 or [I] >>>  >>> Enter content >>>

### Save Birthday

[Phone Book Entry] window >>>  
 >>>  >>> Enter date of birth >>>

### Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry] window >>> [N]  
 >>>  >>> Change entry number >>>

## Phone Book Search

### Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window

[Phone Book Entry List] window >>> [P] >>> **Change Display** >>>  >>> **Alphabet, Memory No. or Group** >>>

### Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List] window or [Phone Book Entry Details] window >>> [P] >>> **Font Setting** >>>  >>> **Standard Font, Big Font or Small Font** >>>

### Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Phone Book Entry Details] window >>> Select a phone number/e-mail address >>> [P] >>> **Move to Top** >>>



 This procedure is available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.

**Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book**

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 >> to select an e-mail address >>  
 >> Compose S! Mail

**Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book**

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 >> to select a phone number >>  
 >> **Compose SMS** >> >>  
 Compose SMS message

**Managing Phone Book****Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item**

[Phone Book Entry List] window >>  
 >> **Ring Tone/Image** >> >>  
 Select an item with "★" >> >>  
 Select an item with "★" >> >>  
**Check Settings** >> >> Check  
 settings of item with "★" >>

**Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item**

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 >> >> **Ring Tone/Image** >> >>  
 Select an item with "★" >> >>  
 Select an item with "★" >> >>  
**Release Settings** >> >> **YES** >>

**Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type**

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 >> >> **Restrictions** >> >>  
 Enter Security Code >> >> Select  
 a restriction type with "★" >> >>  
 >> **Check Settings** >>

**Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type**

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 >> >> **Restrictions** >> >>  
 Enter Security Code >> >> Select  
 a restriction type with "★" >> >>  
 >> **Release Settings** >> >> **YES**  
 >>

**Check Number of Phone Book Entries**

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 >> >> **No. of Phone Book** >>

**Edit a Phone Book Entry**

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 >> >> **Edit Phone Book** >> >>  
 Edit each item >> >> **YES** >>   
 ● To Save as a New Entry  
 >> **No** >> >> Enter entry number  
 The edited entry is saved as a new  
 entry and the original entry remains  
 the same as before.



## Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 >> [F] >> **Copy to USIM** or **Copy from USIM** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

## Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 >> Select an entry >> [F] >> **Delete Data** >> [ ]

- To select *Delete This*  
 >> **Delete This** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete selected*  
 >> **Delete selected** >> [ ] >> Select entries >> [ ] >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete All*  
 >> **Delete All** >> [ ] >> Enter Security Code >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

## Delete Items from an Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 >> [ ] to select an item >> [F] >> **Delete Data** >> [ ] >> **Delete Phone No.**, **Delete Mail Add.**, **Delete Address**, **Delete Birthday**, **Delete Memorandums**, **Delete Image** or **Delete This** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

## Delete an Entry from USIM Card

[ ] >> **Tools** >> [ ] >> **USIM Operation** >> [ ] >> Enter Security Code >> [ ] >> **Delete** >> [ ] >> **USIM** >> [ ] >> **Phone Book** >> [ ] >> Search Phone Book >> Select an entry >> [ ] >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

# S! Addressbook Back-up

## Start Here

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window  
 ..... P. 2-27

## Delete Synchronize Log

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window  
 >> **Sync Log** >> [ ] >> Select Log >> [ ]

- To select *Delete This*  
 >> **Delete This** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete selected*  
 >> **Delete selected** >> [ ] >> Select Log >> [ ] >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete All*  
 >> **Delete All** >> [ ] >> Enter Security Code >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]





# Calling

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>	<b>Calling While Abroad</b>	
<b>Voice Call</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>	<b>(Global Roaming)</b> .....	<b>3-13</b>
Making Voice Calls.....	3-3	Calling Japan and Other Countries .....	3-13
International Calls.....	3-3	Calling within the Same Country.....	3-13
Answering Voice Calls.....	3-4	<b>Optional Services</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>
Answering Machine .....	3-4	Overview .....	3-14
<b>Video Call</b> .....	<b>3-7</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>3-16</b>
Video Call Window .....	3-7	Outgoing Call Functions.....	3-16
Making Video Calls .....	3-7	International Calls .....	3-16
Answering Video Calls .....	3-8	Handling Incoming Calls .....	3-16
<b>Call Logs</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>	Engaged Call Operations .....	3-17
Dialing from Call Logs .....	3-10	Answering Machine.....	3-18
Call Time & Cost .....	3-11	Call Logs .....	3-18
<b>Speed Dial</b> .....	<b>3-12</b>	Speed Dial .....	3-19
Abbreviated Dialing.....	3-12	Optional Services .....	3-19
Dialing from Quick List.....	3-12		





# Overview

Voice call and video call are available on handset.

### Voice Call

Make Calls to:

SoftBank Handsets   Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones   Landlines

### Video Call

Make Calls to:

SoftBank Handsets   Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones   Landlines

Other party must use a video call compatible phone



### International Call

#### Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls.

- International phone service available without separate application.

### Global Roaming

#### Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible. (Prior application may be required.)

- For details of service and eligible countries and regions, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

## Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119, or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)  
 930CA reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

**Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.**

- Restrict Dialing (P. 2-24)
- Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 14-19)
- Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-8)
- PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)



## Making Voice Calls

### 1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

#### ■ Correcting Misentries

▶▶ to scroll cursor ▶▶ Reenter number(s)

#### ■ Deleting Numbers

▶▶ to select a number ▶▶

#### ■ Deleting Phone Number

▶▶ Press and hold or

### 2



Voice Call Window

### 3 to end call

#### Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.
- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters Power Saver Mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 14-7). Handset can be operated in Power Saver Mode in the same way as when Display is lit.

- Call ends when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

## Available Keys during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	
Hold Call	

## International Calls

- International phone service available without separate application.

### 1 Enter phone number ▶▶

▶▶ *Int'l Call* ▶▶

### 2 Select a country code ▶▶

▶▶ Select an international prefix number ▶▶ ▶▶

### 3 to end call



## Answering Voice Calls

1 When a call arrives >>

2 to end call

### Tip

- Open handset to answer a call.

## Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

### Setting Answering Machine

1 >> **Settings** >> >> **Incoming Call** >> >> **Answering Machine** >>

2 **ON** >> >> **Select an outgoing message** >>

3 **Enter ring time**

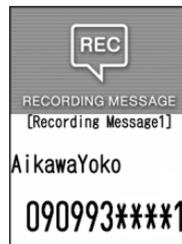
### Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forward.
- Answering Machine can be set or canceled by pressing and holding in Standby.
- Answering Machine is unavailable when power is off, in a place with no signal reception, or in Emission OFF Mode. Use Voice Mail instead (see P. 3-15).

### ⊙ When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded.

Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.



### ■ To Answer Call during Recording

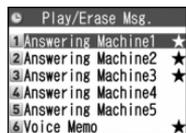
>>



## Playing Messages

1 **Select notification**

or



Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by "★."

2 **Select a message**

■ **To Delete a Message While Playing it**

**Erase** **YES**

## Available Keys during Playback

Stop	or
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

### Tip

- Pressing in Standby also plays recorded voice messages. When there is a voice memo but no voice message, the voice memo plays.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu:  
 **Play/Erase Msg.**

## Available Keys during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	
Adjust Volume	
Pause/Play	
Stop	
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

### Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu:  
 **Play/Erase VC Msg.**

## Activate When Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

1 **When a call arrives**

Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.

### Note

- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Outgoing Call Functions

- ❖ Show/Hide Caller ID
- ❖ Adjust Earpiece Volume in Advance
- ❖ Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

P. 3-16)

#### International Calls

- ❖ Enter “+” to Call Abroad

P. 3-16)

#### Handling Incoming Calls

- ❖ Reject Calls
- ❖ Place Calls on Hold
- ❖ Forward Calls
- ❖ Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

P. 3-16)

#### Engaged Call Operations

- ❖ Handsfree
- ❖ Send Touch Tones

P. 3-17)

#### Answering Machine

- ❖ Delete Recorded Messages

P. 3-18)

## Customize

#### Outgoing Calls

- ❖ Save Touch Tones
- ❖ Set Numbers after “\*” as Sub Address
- ❖ Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers

P. 14-17)

#### Display Settings

- ❖ Set an Outgoing Call Image
- ❖ Set an Incoming Call Image

P. 14-4)

#### International Calls

- ❖ Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”
- ❖ Change a Country Code
- ❖ Save an International Access Code

P. 14-17)

#### Incoming Call Alerts

- ❖ Adjust Ringtone Volume
- ❖ Set a Ringtone
- ❖ Set Vibration
- ❖ Set Illumination Color
- ❖ Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

P. 14-10)

#### Answering Incoming Calls

- ❖ Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key Except Send Key
- ❖ Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key Except Send Key
- ❖ Set to Answer Call by Opening Handset

P. 14-12)

#### Call Settings

- ❖ Set Noise Reduction
- ❖ Set Weak Signal Alarm
- ❖ Set Reconnection Tone
- ❖ Set a Hold Message

P. 14-18)



## Video Call Window

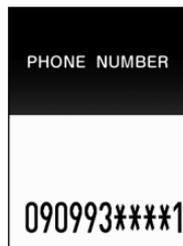


## Video Call Indicators

	Transmitting Audio
	Transmission Failed
	Transmitting Video
	Transmission Failed
	Sending Camera Image
	Substitute Image
	Handsfree ON
	Handsfree OFF
	Mute
	Portrait
	Scenery
	Macro

## Making Video Calls

### 1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

#### ■ Correcting Misentries

▶ to scroll cursor ▶ Reenter number(s)

#### ■ Deleting Numbers

▶ to select a number ▶ (クリア)  
Press and hold (クリア) to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

#### ■ Deleting Phone Number

▶ to select the first or last number ▶ Press and hold (クリア)

### 2



Video Call Window

### 3 to end call

#### Tip

- Closing handset will end a video call.
- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Handset is unequipped with a front camera. Image sent to other party is substitute image or rear camera image.
- Charging may automatically stop or camera image may switch to substitute image if charging while making a video call, depending on temperature and handset usage (ex. also recording TV).



## Available Keys during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	
Hold Call	
Toggle Main Window Images	Press and hold  to toggle image as follows: The other party's image → Your image → The other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	or press and hold
Mute Audio	 To cancel mute, press  again

## Answering Video Calls

### 1 When a video call arrives ▶▶



### 2 to end call

#### Tip

- Closing handset will end a video call.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Outgoing Call Functions

- ❖ Show/Hide Caller ID
- ❖ Adjust Earpiece Volume in Advance
- ❖ Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

( P. 3-16)

#### Handling Incoming Calls

- ❖ Reject Calls
- ❖ Place Calls on Hold
- ❖ Forward Calls

( P. 3-16)

#### Engaged Call Operations

- ❖ Handsfree
- ❖ Set Image Quality
- ❖ Adjust Brightness
- ❖ Change White Balance
- ❖ Change Color Tone
- ❖ Change Scene
- ❖ Backlight Lighting Time

( P. 3-17)



## Customize

### Outgoing Calls

- ❖ Set Numbers after “\*” as Sub Address
- ❖ Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers

( P. 14-17)

### Display Settings

- ❖ Set an Outgoing Call Image
- ❖ Set an Incoming Call Image

( P. 14-4)

### Incoming Call Alerts

- ❖ Adjust Ringtone Volume
- ❖ Set a Ringtone
- ❖ Set Vibration
- ❖ Set Illumination Color
- ❖ Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

( P. 14-10)

### Answering Incoming Calls

- ❖ Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key Except Send Key
- ❖ Set to Answer Calls by Opening Handset

( P. 14-12)

### Call Settings

- ❖ Set Noise Reduction

- ❖ Set Weak Signal Alarm
- ❖ Set Reconnection Tone
- ❖ Set a Hold Message

( P. 14-18)

### Video Calls

- ❖ Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls
- ❖ Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- ❖ Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- ❖ Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

( P. 14-20)



## Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

Up to 30 Dialed Calls and 30 Received Calls (including Missed Calls) are stored.

## Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.

Voice Calls	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Calls	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Video Calls	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed

International Video Calls	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Answering Machine	Voice Messages
	Video Messages
Packet Transmission	
GMT	Outgoing & Incoming Calls Appears when outside the GMT+09 time zone. Time appears in summer time when summer time is set.

## Redial/Received Calls

1 or

Redial		
1	4/16 8:23	
	AikawaYoko	
2	4/15 23:14	
	KoyamaKaori	
3	4/15 19:36	
	EtoTakayuki	
4	4/14 21:59	
	090993****5	
5	4/13 12:03	
	MakinoTatsuya	
6	4/13 10:39	
	090993****9	

Redial Window

Received Calls		
1	4/16 7:00	
	KoyamaKaori	
2	4/15 11:09	
	EtoTakayuki	
3	4/15 9:25	
	MakinoTatsuya	
4	4/14 22:31	
	090993****5	
5	4/14 17:14	
	090993****4	
6	4/13 19:08	
	AikawaYoko	

Received Calls Window

2 Select a record or

■ To Check Details of a Record  
▶▶ Select a record

## Dialed Calls

1 ▶▶ Own Data ▶▶ ▶▶  
Dialed Calls

Dialed Calls 1/2		
1	4/16 8:23	
	AikawaYoko	
2	4/15 23:14	
	KoyamaKaori	
3	4/15 19:36	
	EtoTakayuki	
4	4/14 21:59	
	090993****5	
5	4/13 19:13	
	AikawaYoko	
6	4/13 12:03	
	MakinoTatsuya	

Dialed Calls Window

2 Select a record or

■ To Check Details of a Record  
▶▶ Select a record



## Checking Number of Missed Calls

### 1 **Own Data** **Received Calls**

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

### 2 **All Calls or Missed Calls**

## Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

**Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.**

### 1 **Settings** **Call Time/Charge** **Call Data**

#### Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

## More Features

### Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- ❖ Change Font Size
- ❖ Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- ❖ Delete Records

P. 3-18

Call Time & Cost

- ❖ Reset Total Call Time
- ❖ Reset Total Call Cost

P. 3-19

### Customize

Incoming Call Alerts

- ❖ Open Missed Calls Window by Opening Handset

P. 14-10

Checking Call Logs

- ❖ Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

P. 14-14

Call Costs

- ❖ Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit
- ❖ Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost

P. 14-19



## Abbreviated Dialing

Just press a number key from **0** to **9** and then **☎** to call Phone Book entries with entry numbers 000 to 009.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

**1** **0** to **9** >> **☎** or **✉**

## Dialing from Quick List

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Quick List to quickly make calls or send messages.

- Quick List is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Although Quick List is available in Secret Mode, secret Phone Book entries cannot be saved to Quick List.

## Saving Entries to Quick List

**1** **☎**



Quick List Window

**2** **☎** to select a tab >> **✉** >> **Search Phone Book** >> **Select an entry** >> **☐**

**3** **Select a phone number or e-mail address** >> **☐**

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

**4** **✉**

## Dialing/Sending Messages from Quick List

**1** **☎**

**2** **☎** to select an entry >> **CALL, MAIL or VIDEO CALL** >> **☐**

■ To Send an S! Mail to All Quick List Entries

>> **☐** >> **Broadcast Mail** >> **☐** >> Compose S! Mail

## More Features

### Advanced

Speed Dial

- ❖ Cancel Entries from Quick List
- ❖ Change Quick List Entry Image

(☎ P. 3-19)



Make calls while overseas.

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application. Details and applications are available online at <http://www.softbank.jp> or by contacting SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).
- 930CA is compatible with 3G networks. Transmission is unavailable in GSM/GPRS areas.

## Calling Japan and Other Countries

**1** Press and hold

"+" is entered.

**2** Enter country code and phone number with area code (excluding the first "0") **>>**

### Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

## Calling within the Same Country

**1** Enter phone number with area code **>>**

- Do not omit "0" from area code.
- Country code not required.

## More Features

### Customize

Global Roaming

- ❖ Set Operator
- ❖ Activate Network Re-search for an Available Operator
- ❖ Set Priority for Operators
- ❖ Show Operator Name While Roaming

( P. 14-21)



### Overview

The following services are available with your handset.

Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. Missed Call Notification Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS.

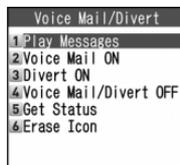
Caller ID	Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls.
-----------	---

\* Separate application is required.

### Activating Call Forward

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

- Settings**  **Optional Services**  **Voice Mail/Divert**



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- Divert ON**  **YES**  **Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls**  **Enter phone number**

### To Search from Phone Book

- to select a search method**  **Search Phone Book**  **Select an entry**  **Select a phone number**  **(twice)**

### 3 No Answer Select a ring time

- To Forward Calls Immediately**  **Always**

### Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press  to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forward for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.



### Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

**1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window  
 ▶▶ **Voice Mail ON** ▶▶ ▶▶  
**YES** ▶▶

**2** **No Answer** ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a ring time ▶▶

■ To Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center Immediately  
 ▶▶ **Always** ▶▶

#### Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forward for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forward has already been set, Call Forward is canceled.

### Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.

**1**   
 Follow voice guidance.

### To Play Messages

**1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window  
 ▶▶ **Play Messages** ▶▶ ▶▶  
**YES** ▶▶

### Canceling Call Forward & Voice Mail

**1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window  
 ▶▶ **Voice Mail/Divert OFF**  
 ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

### More Features

#### Advanced

#### Call Forward & Voice Mail

- ❖ Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

- ❖ Check Current Setting Status ( P. 3-19)

#### Call Waiting

- ❖ Set Call Waiting
- ❖ Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status ( P. 3-20)

#### Group Calling

- ❖ Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
- ❖ Switch Parties
- ❖ Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
- ❖ Talk with a Specific Party
- ❖ End Call with a Specific Party ( P. 3-20)

#### Call Barring

- ❖ Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
- ❖ Cancel Call Barring
- ❖ Change Network Password
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status ( P. 3-21)

#### Caller ID

- ❖ Show/Hide Phone Number
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status ( P. 3-21)



## Outgoing Call Functions

### Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number >> >>

**Notify Caller ID** >> >> **OFF, ON**  
or **Cancel Prefix** >> >> or

Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.

Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

### Adjust Earpiece Volume in Advance

Enter phone number >> Press and hold >>

### Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number >> >>

**Prefix Numbers** >> >> Select an item >> >> or

Store area codes and country codes beforehand. Enter prefixes before making calls.

Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.

0046010 is set to 国際発信 by default.

## International Calls

### Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold >> Enter country code >> Enter area code >> Enter phone number >> >> **Dial** >>

"+" appears when you press and hold , indicating that the international code set in *Auto Int'l Call Set.* is entered.

## Handling Incoming Calls

### Reject Calls

When a call arrives >> >> **Call Rejection** >>

### Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives >> >> To answer call >>

Press again to end the call on hold.



## Forward Calls

When a call arrives >> >> **Call Forwarding** >>

This procedure is available when Call Forward has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

## Voice Calls

### Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives >> >> **Call Forwarding** >>

This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

## Engaged Call Operations

### Start Here

[Voice Call] window ..... P. 3-3

[Video Call] window ..... P. 3-7

### Voice & Video Calls

#### Handsfree

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window >> >> **YES** >>

Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

## Voice Calls

### Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call] window >> (twice) >> **Settings** >> >> **Dialing** >> >> **Pause Dial** >> (twice)

Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 14-17).

- To send touch tones all at once:
  - >> Press and hold >> **Send at one time** >>

## Video Calls

### Set Image Quality

[Video Call] window >> >> **V. Call Settings** >> >> **Visual Prefer.** >> >> Select an item >>



## Adjust Brightness

[Video Call] window >> [P] >> **V. Call Settings** >> [■] >> **Brightness** >> [■] >> Select a level >> [■]

Available when sending camera image.

## Change White Balance

[Video Call] window >> [P] >> **V. Call Settings** >> [■] >> **White Balance** >> [■] >> Select an item >> [■]

Available when sending camera image.

## Change Color Tone

[Video Call] window >> [P] >> **V. Call Settings** >> [■] >> **Color Mode Set** >> [■] >> Select an item >> [■]

## Change Scene

[Video Call] window >> [P] >> **V. Call Settings** >> [■] >> **Select Scene** >> [■] >> Select a scene >> [■]

Available when sending camera image.

## Backlight Lighting Time

[Video Call] window >> [P] >> **Display Light** >> [■] >> **All Time ON** or **Same as Backlight** >> [■]

## Answering Machine

### Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window ..... P. 3-5

## Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window >> Select a message >> [P] >> **Delete This, Delete Rec. Msg.** or **Delete All** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

Selecting **Delete All** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

## Call Logs

### Start Here

[Redial] window..... P. 3-10  
 [Dialed Calls] window ..... P. 3-10  
 [Received Calls] window ..... P. 3-10

### Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

## Change Font Size

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window or [Received Calls] window >> [P] >> **Font Setting** >> [■] >> **Standard Font, Big Font** or **Small Font** >> [■]



**Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)**

[Received Calls] window >> [P] >> **Ring Time** >> [■]

**Delete Records**

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window or [Received Calls] window >> [P] >> **Delete** >> [■]

- To select *Delete This*  
>> **Delete This** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]
- To select *Delete selected*  
>> **Delete selected** >> [■] >> Select records >> [■] >> [Envelope icon] >> **YES** >> [■]
- To select *Delete All*  
>> **Delete All** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

 Selecting *Delete All* in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

**Call Time & Cost**

**Reset Total Call Time**

[■] >> **Settings** >> [■] >> **Call Time/Charge** >> [■] >> **Reset Total** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> **Reset Total Duration** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

**Reset Total Call Cost**

[■] >> **Settings** >> [■] >> **Call Time/Charge** >> [■] >> **Reset Total** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> **Reset Total Cost** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■] >> Enter PIN2 >> [■]

**Speed Dial**

**Start Here**

[Quick List] window ..... P. 3-12

**Cancel Entries from Quick List**

[Quick List] window >> [P] to select a tab >> [P] >> **Release This** or **Release All** >> [■] (>> Enter Security Code >> [■]) >> **YES** >> [■]

**Change Quick List Entry Image**

[Quick List] window >> [P] to select a tab >> [P] >> **Image** >> [■] >> Select a folder >> [■] >> Select an image >> [■]

**Optional Services**

**Start Here**

[Voice Mail/Divert] window..... P. 3-14  
[Voice Call] window..... P. 3-3

**Call Forward & Voice Mail**

**Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages**

[Voice Mail/Divert] window >> **Erase Icon** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]



### Check Current Setting Status

[Voice Mail/Divert] window >> **Get Status** >>

### Call Waiting

#### Set Call Waiting

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Call Waiting** >>  >> **ON** or **OFF** >>  >> **YES** >>

#### Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call] window >> **Call waiting tone sounds** >>

Press  to toggle between two parties.

### Check Current Setting Status

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Call Waiting** >>  >> **Get Status** >>

### Group Calling

#### Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

[Voice Call] window >> クリア >> Enter phone number >>

To dial from Phone Book, press  >> **Phone Book** >> , search Phone Book, select a number and then press .

To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press  >> **Redial** or **Received Calls** >> , select a phone number/name and then press .

#### Switch Parties

[Voice Call] window >>

Press  to toggle parties.

#### Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

[Voice Call] window >> While talking with one party >>  >> **Join Multi Party** >>

### Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window >> While talking with multiple parties >>  >> **Select Ans. Call** >>  >> Select a party >>

The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

### End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window >> While talking with multiple parties >>  >> **Select Disc Call** >>  >> Select a party >>



## Call Barring

### Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Call Barring** >>  >> **Outgoing Calls** or **Incoming Calls** >>  Select an item >>  >> **YES** >>  >> Enter Network Password >>

Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when Call Barring is set.

When **Bar All Outgoing Calls** or **Bar All Incoming Calls** is set for Call Barring, Call Forward is unavailable (When Call Forward is set, Call Barring is unavailable).

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

## Cancel Call Barring

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Call Barring** >>  >> **Cancel All Barring** >>  >> **YES** >>  >> Enter Network Password >>

## Change Network Password

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Call Barring** >>  >> **Set NW Password** >>  >> **YES** >>  >> Enter current Network Password >>  >> Enter new Network Password >>  >> Enter new Network Password again for confirmation >>

## Check Current Setting Status

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Call Barring** >>  >> **Get Status** >>  >> Select an item >>

## Caller ID

### Show/Hide Phone Number

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Caller ID Notification** >>  >> **Activate/Deactivate** >>  >> **ON** or **OFF** >>  >> **YES** >>

### Check Current Setting Status

>> **Settings** >>  >> **Optional Services** >>  >> **Caller ID Notification** >>  >> **Get Status** >>





# Security

<b>PIN Settings</b> .....	<b>4-2</b>	<b>Setting Secret Data</b> .....	<b>4-9</b>
Setting PIN1 Entry .....	4-2	Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode....	4-9
Changing PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2	Hiding Handset Data .....	4-9
<b>Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset</b>			
<b>Use</b> .....	<b>4-3</b>		
Activating Dial Lock .....	4-3		
Setting Custom Lock .....	4-3		
Disabling Keypad .....	4-4		
Using Secure Remote Lock .....	4-5		
Using IC Card Authentication.....	4-6		
<b>Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming</b>			
<b>Calls</b> .....	<b>4-7</b>		
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID.....	4-7		
Rejecting Calls from Numbers			
Not Saved in Phone Book .....	4-7		
Delaying Ringtone for Numbers			
Not Saved in Phone Book .....	4-7		
Emission OFF Mode.....	4-8		





## Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 **Settings** **Security** **PIN Setting**
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 **PIN1 Code Entry Set**
- 4 **ON** Enter PIN1
  - Set to Not Require PIN Authentication
    - OFF** Enter PIN1

## Changing PIN1/PIN2

● *PIN1 Code Entry Set* must be set to *ON* before changing PIN1.

- 1 **Settings** **Security** **PIN Setting**
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 **Change PIN1 Code or Change PIN2 Code**
- 4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2
  - Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation



## Activating Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

- 1 **Settings** **Security** **Function Lock**

- 2 Enter Security Code

- 3 **Dial Lock**

### Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
  - Power on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
  - Answering incoming voice/video calls

## Canceling Dial Lock

- 1 Enter Security Code

If incorrect Security Code is entered, press and enter correct Security Code.

### Tip

- If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

## Setting Custom Lock

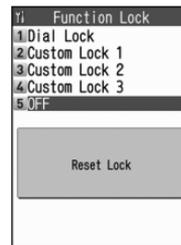
Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc.) that contain personal information. Custom Locks can be customized.

- For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 11-4.

## Activating Custom Lock

- 1 **Settings** **Security** **Function Lock**

- 2 Enter Security Code



Lock Window

- 3 **Custom Lock 1 - Custom Lock 3**

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

### To Edit Title

- Select a Custom Lock **Edit Title** Edit title

### When Custom Lock is Set

Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/data. Setting returns when handset returns to Standby.

- *Dial/Sending Mail* and *Incoming/Mail Disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.



## Customizing Custom Lock

Select functions/data to lock.

### ○ Indicators

Selected functions/data locked.

All functions/data locked.

### ○ Select and Lock Functions or Data

**1** [Lock] window **>>** Select a Custom Lock **>>**

**2** Select a category **>>**

**3** Select a group **>>**

**4** Select functions or data to Lock **>>**

Function is locked. Press again to deselect. Repeat to select the function to lock.

■ To Select All Functions  
**>>** **>>** *Select All* **>>**

■ To Deselect All Functions  
**>>** **>>** *Release All* **>>**

**5** (three times)

### ○ Lock Category or Group

**1** [Lock] window **>>** Select a Custom Lock **>>**

**2** Select a category (**>>** **>>** Select a group) **>>** **>>** *Select All* **>>**

■ To Cancel Lock for Category or Group  
**>>** **>>** *Release All* **>>**

**3** (**>>** )

### ○ Lock All Categories

**1** [Lock] window **>>** Select a Custom Lock **>>**

**2** **>>** *Select All* **>>**

■ To Cancel Lock for All Categories  
**>>** **>>** *Release All* **>>**

**3**

### ○ Lock All Group

**1** [Lock] window **>>** Select a Custom Lock **>>**

**2** Select a category **>>**

**3** **>>** *Select All* **>>**

■ To Cancel Lock for All Group  
**>>** **>>** *Release All* **>>**

**4** (twice)

## Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys when handset is closed or when handset is not operated for a certain period of time.

### Setting Keypad Lock

**1** **>>** *Settings* **>>** **>>** *Security* **>>** **>>** *Keypad Lock* **>>**

**2** Enter Security Code **>>**

**3** Select an item



■ **To Lock When Handset Closed**  
▶▶ *After Closed* ▶▶ ▶▶ *ON* ▶▶

■ **To Lock After Handset Closed a Certain Time**  
▶▶ *Timer* ▶▶ ▶▶ Select time until lock activates ▶▶

■ **To Lock by Pressing and Holding**   
▶▶ *Lock Key* ▶▶ ▶▶ *ON* ▶▶   
Pressing with handset closed activates lock.

■ **To Require Security Code to Cancel Keypad Lock**  
▶▶ *Security Code* ▶▶ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶

## 4

### ○ **When Keypad Lock is Set**

All key operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.

When a call arrives or the alarm is activated, appears at the bottom of Display to indicate some keys are operable.

### Tip

- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Keypad Lock* is set.

## Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

### ○ **When Security Code is YES**

1 **When Keypad Lock is set** ▶▶  
**Enter Security Code** ▶▶

### ○ **When Security Code is NO**

1 **Open handset**  
Alternatively, press and hold .

### Tip

- Alternatively, press or close and reopen handset.

## Using Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. Once the lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for turning the power on. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or access My SoftBank from your handset by the following procedure:

▶▶ *メニューリスト (Menu List)* ▶▶   
▶▶ *My SoftBank* ▶▶



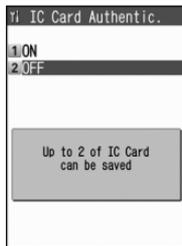
## Using IC Card Authentication

Hold a FeliCa compatible contactless IC card over handset to authenticate the user ID without canceling Dial Lock or Keypad Lock, or without entering a code number.

- IC Card Authentication is available even when IC Card Lock is activated.
- Register up to two contactless IC cards.

## Activating IC Card Authentication

- 1 >> **Settings** >> >> **Security** >> >> **IC Card Authentic.** >> >> Enter Security Code >>



IC Card Authentication Window

- 2 **ON** >> >> **OK** >>

### ■ To Activate Registered IC Card

- >> **ON** >>

### ■ To Deactivate Authentication

- >> **OFF** >> >> **YES** or **NO** >>

Select **YES** to delete or **NO** not to delete all registered IC Card data.

### ■ To Register IC Card

- >> >> **New Ext. IC Card** >>

### ■ To Delete IC Card Registration

- >> >> **Del. Ext. IC Card** >> >> Select IC Card to delete >> >> >> **YES** >>

## 3 IC Card over handset

Once registered, the on Display disappears.



## Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

1 **Settings** **Security** **Call Setting W/O ID**

2 Enter Security Code

3 **Unknown, Payphone or User Unset**

4 **Reject**

- To Receive Incoming Calls
  - ▶ **Accept** ▶ **Select Ring Tone or Select Calling Disp.**
  - ▶ Select type ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a ringtone or image

## Rejecting Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

1 **Settings** **Security** **Reject Unknown**

2 Enter Security Code

3 **Reject**

- To Receive Incoming Calls
  - ▶ **Accept**

### Note

- This procedure is unavailable when Set *Mute Seconds* under *Ring Time (sec.)* is set to *ON* (P. 4-7).

## Delaying Ringtone for Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

Delay ringtone, for calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book. It can prevent you from accidentally returning calls to nuisance calls from Received Calls; as missed calls with very short ring times are not saved in Received Calls, when *Missed Calls Display* is set to *Not Display*.

- This procedure is unavailable when *Reject Unknown* is set to *Reject*.

1 **Settings** **Incoming Call** **Ring Time (sec.)**

2 **Set Mute Seconds** **ON** Enter time before ringtone plays

- To Set Zero Seconds
  - ▶ **OFF**

3 **Missed Calls Display** **Display or Not Display**



### Tip

- Secret Phone Book entries are also treated as not saved in Phone Book.
- You need not to specify a time when *OFF* is selected.

## Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

**1**  **» Settings**  **» Security**  **» Emission OFF Mode**  **» YES**

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

### Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.



### Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.

Secret Mode:

View all data and secret data.

Secret Data Only Mode:

Only secret data is available for Phone Book and Schedule, although all data and secret data can be viewed for images, mail, and bookmarks.

### Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 **Settings** **Security** **Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode**

- 2 Enter Security Code

### Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 In Standby,

### Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- The following data can be stored in Secret Folders: Images, videos, received and sent messages, and bookmarks of Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser.
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
  - My Picture: Approx. 2 MB
  - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

### Storing Data in Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode

- 2 In a data list window
  - Select a data item
  - Keep in Secret**

### Returning Data in Secret Folders to Ordinary Data

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a data folder list window **Secret**
- 3 Select a data item **Put Out**
- 4 Select a destination folder

#### Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.





# Mail

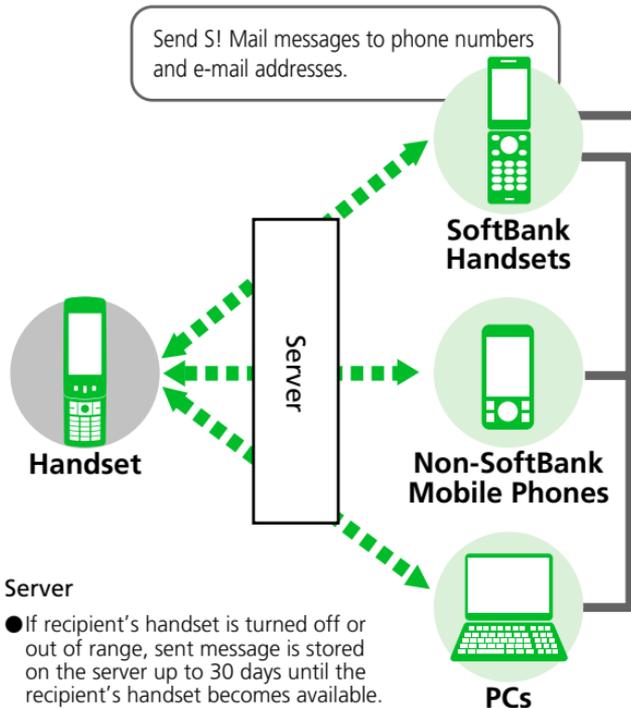
<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
<b>Sending Messages</b> .....	<b>5-3</b>
Sending S! Mail .....	5-3
Sending SMS Messages .....	5-5
<b>Receiving &amp; Opening Messages</b> .....	<b>5-7</b>
Opening New Messages .....	5-7
Opening Inbox Messages.....	5-7
Replying to Messages .....	5-8
Replying (Quote Message) .....	5-8
Using Mail List .....	5-8
<b>Handling Messages</b> .....	<b>5-10</b>
Message Storage Locations .....	5-10
Opening Sent & Received Messages .....	5-10
Sorting Messages .....	5-12
Prohibiting Access to Messages.....	5-12
Saving S! Mail Attachments .....	5-13
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>5-16</b>
Sending Messages .....	5-16
Receiving/Opening Messages .....	5-20
Managing/Using Messages .....	5-21



# Overview

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS.

## 5 Mail



### Server

- If recipient's handset is turned off or out of range, sent message is stored on the server up to 30 days until the recipient's handset becomes available.

## Available Mail Services

### SMS

Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

### S! Mail (Separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

#### Customize Handset E-mail Address.

Effective for blocking spam.

- ▶ Mail Setting ▶  ▶ Custom Mail Address ▶
- ▶ Follow onscreen instructions.

### Graphic Mail

Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

### Image Info Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.

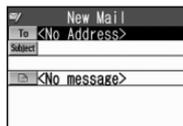
### Blog Upload

Add the e-mail address for an upload destination to Blog/Mail Member to upload to SNS and a blog.



## Sending S! Mail

### 1 Press and hold



Composition Window

### 2 Select address field

**Enter Address**

Enter address

#### ■ Adding Recipients

Select address field

Select address field **Enter Address** Enter address

### 3 Select Subject field

**Enter subject**

If (double-byte mode) appears, switch to single-byte mode (P. 2-29).

### Tip

- Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

### 4 Select text field

**Enter text**



Text Entry Window

### 5

#### ■ To Cancel Transmission

- When *Start Packet Connection* appears ; or
- During Transmission

#### ■ If **Resend mail?** Appears

- YES**

## Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
- Videos
- Melodies
- Music (Songs)
- Books
- Phone Book entries
- Account Details
- Schedule (To Do List)
- Bookmarks

- For information about image, video, melody and music files, see P. 12-2.

### 1 [Composition] window

**Attach File**

### 2 Select a file type

**Enter Security Code** **Select a file**

#### ■ Images with Large File Size

**Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down** or **VGA Scale Down**

#### ■ Attach Additional Files

Repeat steps 1 and 2 above

#### ■ Open an Attached File

Select an attached file

### Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.



## Graphic Mail

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

**1** [Text Entry] window **Select a font size** **Enter text**

**2** **to select a background color**

■ **To Toggle Color Palettes**  
 **In Background color window**



Toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.

**3** **Select a folder**  
 **Select an image**

■ **Inserting Images with Large File Size**  
 **Insert Mail or Add Art Scale Down**

**4** **Enter text** **(twice)** **End**

**5**

## Adding Addresses to Blog/Mail Member List

Group addresses into Blog/Mail Member list and send messages by group.

Post Camera images to a blog via e-mail (P. 5-16).

● Set one Blog/Mail Member as a blog upload destination.

**1** **Own Data** **Blog/Mail Member**



Blog/Mail Member List

■ **To Specify as Blog Upload Destination**

**Select Blog/Mail Member** **Blog/Mail Member "★"** specified as upload destination appears.

■ **To Cancel Blog Upload Destination**

**Select Blog/Mail Member with "★"**

**2** **Select a Blog/Mail Member list**



Blog/Mail Member Window

**3** **<Not Stored>** **Enter address**

■ **To Save an Address from Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List**  
 **Look-up Address** **Phone Book, Sent Address or Received Address**  
 **Search Phone Book** **Select an address** **(twice)**



## SNS/Blog

Obtain an upload e-mail address beforehand from an SNS/blog service. Contact your SNS/blog service provider for details.

Set the e-mail address to Blog/Mail Member and post your entries to an SNS, a blog, etc. via e-mail (P. 5-16).

## Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, specifying phone numbers as address.

**1** **Compose SMS**



SMS Composition Window

**2** **Enter Address**  
 **Enter phone number**

**3** **Enter text**

**4**

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Composing Messages

- ❖ Enter Address from Phone Book
- ❖ Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- ❖ Specify Blog/Mail Member List Recipients
- ❖ Set To, Cc or Bcc
- ❖ Delete an Address
- ❖ Insert Header/Signature
- ❖ Enter My Pictograms
- ❖ Delete Text
- ❖ Change SMS Message to S! Mail ( P. 5-16)

#### Sending Messages

- ❖ Set Priority (S! Mail)
- ❖ Server Storage Period (SMS)
- ❖ Check Delivery
- ❖ Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It
- ❖ Delete a Message without Transmitting It ( P. 5-17)

#### Attaching Files

- ❖ Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail
- ❖ Delete Files Attached to S! Mail ( P. 5-18)

#### Blog/Mail Member

- ❖ Edit an Address
- ❖ Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List
- ❖ Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name
- ❖ Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name ( P. 5-18)

#### Graphic Mail

- ❖ Apply Effects to Entered Text
- ❖ Change Effects
- ❖ Cancel Last Applied Effect
- ❖ Preview Graphic Mail
- ❖ Cancel All Effects
- ❖ Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- ❖ Download Templates
- ❖ Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- ❖ Edit a Template
- ❖ Edit Title of a Template
- ❖ Delete Templates ( P. 5-18)



### Customize

#### S! Mail Settings

- ❖ Edit Header/Signature
- ❖ Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- ❖ Set to Check Delivery

( P. 14-22)

#### SMS Settings

- ❖ Set to Check Delivery
- ❖ Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- ❖ Set SMS Input Language

( P. 14-22)



## Opening New Messages

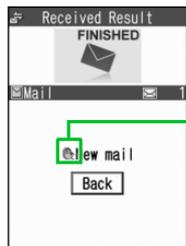
Received Result window opens for new messages.

- By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

### Image Information Mail

When an S! Mail is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears.

If a message contains a specific keyword, a corresponding indicator appears (P. 14-23).



Indicator

Received Result Window

### Indicators

	Urgent		Advice
	Love		Try Hard
	Hate		Invitation
	Happy		Feedback
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Announcement
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Information

— appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

**1 [Received Result] window** **Mail**

**2 Select a message**

### Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from shortcut notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.

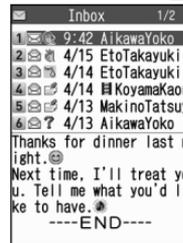
## Opening Inbox Messages

**1** **Inbox**



Folder List

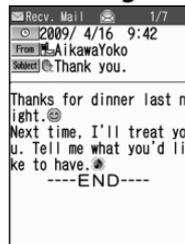
**2 Select a folder**



Message List



### 3 Select a message ▶▶



Message Window

- To Check Previous/Next Message  
▶▶

## Replying to Messages

- 1 [Inbox Message List] ▶▶  
Select a message ▶▶ ▶▶

- When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients  
▶▶ To Sender or To All ▶▶

- 2 Edit subject/text ▶▶

## Replying (Quote Message)

- 1 [Inbox Message List] ▶▶  
Select a message ▶▶ ▶▶

- When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients  
▶▶ To Sender or To All ▶▶

- 2 Edit subject/text ▶▶

### Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

## Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

- 1 ▶▶ **Server Mail** ▶▶ ▶▶ **Mail List** ▶▶ (▶▶ **YES** ▶▶



Mail List

- 2 Select a message ▶▶ ▶▶ **Message Receive** ▶▶ ▶▶ **Receive This** ▶▶



## Receiving & Opening Messages

### ■ To Receive Multiple Messages

» » **Message Receive** »

» **Receive Selected** » »

Select messages » »

### ■ To Receive All Messages

» » **Message Receive** »

» **Receive All** »

### Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Receiving Messages

- ❖ Manually Retrieve Messages (👉 P. 5-20)

#### Checking Messages

- ❖ Retrieve Complete S! Mail
- ❖ Delete S! Mail from Server
- ❖ Check Message Information (👉 P. 5-20)

#### Server Message Operations

- ❖ Update Mail List
- ❖ Switch Mail List Views
- ❖ Check Server Message Information
- ❖ Forward a Server Message
- ❖ Delete Server Messages
- ❖ Check Server Memory Status (👉 P. 5-20)

## Customize

#### Incoming Message Alerts

- ❖ Adjust Ringtone Volume
- ❖ Set a Ringtone
- ❖ Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone
- ❖ Set Vibration
- ❖ Set Illumination Color
- ❖ Open New Mail Window by Opening Handset (👉 P. 14-10)

#### Incoming Message Settings

- ❖ Customize E-mail Address
- ❖ Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- ❖ Do Not Show Image Indicators
- ❖ Show Keyword Indicators
- ❖ Delete Keywords
- ❖ Set Manual Receive (👉 P. 14-23)

#### Reply Settings

- ❖ Change Quotation Marks (👉 P. 14-24)



## Message Storage Locations

Press to open Mail Main Menu. Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.



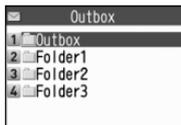
Message Menu

- Received messages
- Sent messages
- Draft messages

## Opening Sent & Received Messages

<Example> Open a Sent Message

1 **Outbox**



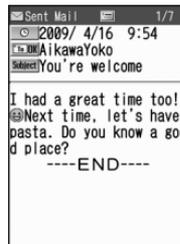
Folder List

2 **Select a folder**



Message List

3 **Select a message**



Message Window

**To Check Previous/Next Message**



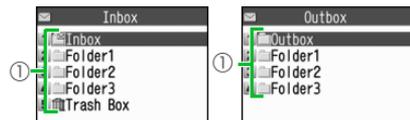
### Tip

- When Outbox/Inbox becomes full, Trash Box messages and then the oldest messages in Outbox/Inbox are deleted next time a new message is sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.



## Mail Windows

Message types, statuses, and attached file types are shown by indicators.



Inbox Folder List

Outbox Folder List

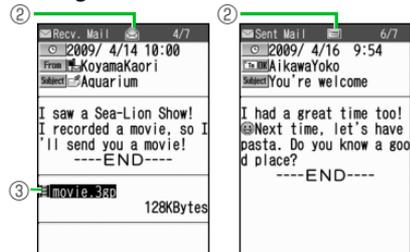
## Message List Windows



Inbox Message List

Outbox Message List

## Message Windows



Received Message Window

Sent Message Window

①	<b>Folder Type</b> General Folder Trash Box Folder Secret Folder
②	<b>Message Status</b> Unread Received Message Read Received Message Protected Unread Received Message Protected Read Received Message Forwarded Message Replied Message Message Sent to a Single Recipient Message Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	<b>Message Type/Attached File Type</b> SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card S! Mail with Text Unreceived Image Attached/Image Inserted in Text Video Attached Melody Attached Song Attached Copyright-protected File Attached Phone Book Entry, Schedule Event or Bookmark Attached E-comic Attached Forwarded Server Message Other Type of File Attached Multiple Files Attached

The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority Message

### Tip

- Copyright-protected files cannot be opened/played unless they are saved in Data Folder.
- If Delivery Report was received, **Subject** appears in field of message.



## Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

**1 [Folder List] >> Select a folder >> [F] >> Auto-sort >> [ ]**

■ When Auto Sort is Already Set to the Folder  
>> Select another criterion >> [F]

**2 Address Sort >> [ ] >> Look-up Address, Look-up Group, Look-up Member or Enter Address >> [ ]**

■ To Sort by Subject  
>> Subject Sort >> [ ] >> Enter subject >> [ ]

■ To Sort Messages Failed to be Replied/Sent  
>> Reply Impossible or Send Impossible >> [ ]

■ To Sort Addresses Not Stored in Phone Book  
>> Unregistered Add. >> [ ]

### Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply Impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send Impossible* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received Address List, or Sent Address List in Look-up address.

## Canceling Auto Sort

**1 [Folder List] >> Select a folder >> [F] >> Auto-sort >> [ ]**

**2 Select a criterion >> [F] >> Release >> [ ]**

**3 Release This >> [ ] >> YES >> [ ]**

■ To Cancel Multiple Criteria  
>> Release Selected >> [ ] >> Select criteria >> [ ] >> [ ] >> YES >> [ ]

■ To Cancel All Criteria

>> Release All >> [ ] >> YES >> [ ]

## Prohibiting Access to Messages

### Setting Mail Box Lock

**1 [ ] >> Mail Setting >> [ ] >> Mail Box Lock >> [ ] >> Enter Security Code >> [ ]**

**2 Select a mail box >> [ ]**  
Repeat step 2 to specify other boxes.

**3 [ ]**

### Setting Folder Lock

**1 [Folder List] >> Select a folder >> [F] >> Folder Lock >> [ ] >> Enter Security Code >> [ ] >> YES >> [ ]**

Locked folders are indicated by



## Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box or folder lock.
- Trash Box folder can also be locked.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

## Storing Messages in Secret Folders

Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-9).

- Unread Messages cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

**1 [Message List] >> Select a message >> [F] >> Keep in Secret >> [ ]**

**2 Keep This >> [ ]**

■ **To Store Multiple Messages**  
 >> **Keep Selected** >> [ ] >> Select a message >> [ ] >> Repeat the same step to specify other messages >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

■ **To Store All Messages in a Folder**  
 >> **Keep All** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

## ○ Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

**1 [Folder List] >> Secret >> [ ]**

**2 Select a message >> [F] >> Put Out >> [ ]**

**3 Put Out This >> [ ] >> Select a folder >> [ ]**

■ **To Return Multiple Messages**  
 >> **Put Out Selected** >> [ ] >> Select a folder >> [ ] >> Select a message >> [ ] >> Repeat the same step to specify other messages >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

■ **To Return All Messages**  
 >> **Put Out All** >> [ ] >> Select a folder >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

## Saving S! Mail Attachments

### Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music, Flash® and Book Files

**1 [Message] window >> Select a file >> [F] >> Save Data >> [ ] >> YES >> [ ]**

**2 Select a folder >> [ ]**

■ **To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.**  
 >> **YES** >> [ ] >> Select an item >> [ ] (>> Select display method >> [ ] >> Confirm display >> [ ])

Select **NO** and press [ ] when you do not want to set the image.

■ **To Set a Melody as Ringtone, etc.**  
 >> **YES** >> [ ] >> Select an item >> [ ]

Select **NO** and press [ ] when you do not want to set the melody.



## Saving an Image Inserted in Text

1 [Message] window **Save Insert Image**

2 Select an image **YES** Select a folder

3 **YES** Select an item

■ When You Do Not Want to Set the Image **NO**

## Saving a Phone Book Entry

1 [Message] window Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) (twice) **Phone** or **USIM** **New**

2 Edit each item

## Saving a Schedule Event

1 [Message] window Select Schedule data (twice)

## Saving a Bookmark

1 [Message] window Select a link (URL, etc.) (twice) Select a destination Select a folder

### Note

- Mail-attached bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Managing Messages

- ❖ Protect a Message
- ❖ Move Messages to a Different Folder
- ❖ Drop Messages into Trash Box
- ❖ Delete Messages
- ❖ Delete All Read Messages
- ❖ Delete All Delivery Reports
- ❖ Delete Attached Files
- ❖ Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- ❖ Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- ❖ Change Message Color
- ❖ Add a Folder
- ❖ Edit a Folder Name
- ❖ Change Order of Folders
- ❖ Delete a Folder
- ❖ Check Number of Saved Messages
- ❖ Check Sent/Received Addresses

P. 5-21

#### Using Messages

- ❖ Edit a Sent Message
- ❖ Edit & Send a Draft Message
- ❖ Forward a Message
- ❖ Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- ❖ Call a Phone Number in Text



## Handling Messages

- ❖ Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- ❖ Access the Internet from a URL in Text
- ❖ Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member
- ❖ Switch Subject Field Views
- ❖ Change Font Size of Text
- ❖ Search for Messages in a Folder
- ❖ Sort Messages
- ❖ Filter Messages
- ❖ Reset Message List View to Default
- ❖ Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- ❖ Open S! Mail Delivery Report

(👉 P. 5-23)



### Customize

#### Message View Settings & Others

- ❖ Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll
- ❖ Set Font Size of Text
- ❖ Set Message List View
- ❖ Play Attached Melodies Automatically
- ❖ Check Mail Settings
- ❖ Reset Mail Settings

(👉 P. 14-24)



## Sending Messages

### Start Here

- [Composition] window ..... P. 5-3
- [Text Entry] window ..... P. 5-3
- [Blog/Mail Member List] ..... P. 5-4
- [Blog/Mail Member] window .... P. 5-4
- [SMS Composition] window ..... P. 5-5

### Composing Messages

#### Enter Address from Phone Book

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window >> **To** >> **Phonebook** >> Select search method >> Select an entry >> Select an e-mail address or phone number >>

#### Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window >> **To** >> **Sent Address** or **Received Address** >> Select an e-mail address/phone number >> (twice)

Alternatively, select **To** and press  to open Sent/Received Address List.

#### Specify Blog/Mail Member List Recipients

[Composition] window >> **To** >> **Blog/Mail Member** >> Select a Blog/Mail Member list >>

All addresses in the selected Blog/Mail Member list are entered in the address field.

You must save addresses to a Blog/Mail Member list in advance.

#### Set To, Cc or Bcc

[Composition] window >> **To** >> Select an address >> **Change Rcv. Type** >> **To, Cc or Bcc** >>

Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.

Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.

When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

#### Delete an Address

[Composition] window >> Select an address >> **Delete Receiver** >> **YES** >>



## Insert Header/Signature

[Composition] window >> [P] >> **Add Header** or **Add Signature** >>



Save header/signature in advance.

## Enter My Pictograms

[Text Entry] window >> Press and hold [ㄚ] >> Select a pictograph >>



>> クリア

Toggle categories by pressing [㊚] or [ㄚ].

My Pictograms are only available for S! Mails.

## Delete Text

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window >> [P] >> **Erase Message** >>  >> **YES** >>

## Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition] window >> [P] >> **S! Mail Conversion** >>

## Sending Messages

### Set Priority (S! Mail)

[Composition] window >> [P] >> **Priority** >>  >> **High, Normal** or **Low** >>

### Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition] window >> [P] >> **SMS Valid. Per.** >>  >> Select a period >>

Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

## Check Delivery

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window >> [P] >> **Delivery Report** or **SMS Report Req.** >>  >> **ON** or **OFF** >>

When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

## Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window >> [P] >> **Save** >>

The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

## Delete a Message without Transmitting It

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window >> [P] >> **Delete** >>  >> **YES** >>



## Attaching Files

Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail

[Composition] window  $\gg$    $\gg$  **Activate Camera**  $\gg$    $\gg$  **Photo or Movie**  $\gg$    $\gg$  Shoot image/video  $\gg$  

Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

[Composition] window  $\gg$  Select an attached file  $\gg$    $\gg$  **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att. Files**  $\gg$    $\gg$  **YES**  $\gg$  

## Blog/Mail Member

Edit an Address

[Blog/Mail Member] window  $\gg$  Select an address  $\gg$    $\gg$  **Edit Address**  $\gg$    $\gg$  Edit address  $\gg$  

Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List

[Blog/Mail Member]  $\gg$  Select an address  $\gg$  

- To select *Delete this*  $\gg$  **Delete this**  $\gg$    $\gg$  **YES**  $\gg$  
- To select *Delete all*  $\gg$  **Delete all**  $\gg$    $\gg$  Enter Security Code  $\gg$    $\gg$  **YES**  $\gg$  

Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List]  $\gg$  Select a Blog/Mail Member list  $\gg$    $\gg$  **Edit Member Name**  $\gg$    $\gg$  Edit name  $\gg$  

Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List]  $\gg$  Select a Blog/Mail Member list  $\gg$    $\gg$  **Reset Member Name**  $\gg$    $\gg$  **YES**  $\gg$  

## Graphic Mail

Apply Effects to Entered Text

[Text Entry] window  $\gg$    $\gg$    $\gg$    $\gg$  Select beginning of characters  $\gg$    $\gg$  Select end of characters  $\gg$    $\gg$  Select effects menu  $\gg$    $\gg$  Apply an effect  Select  and press  $\gg$  **YES**  $\gg$   to select the entire text.

Change Effects

[Text Entry] window  $\gg$    $\gg$    $\gg$    $\gg$  Select beginning of characters  $\gg$    $\gg$  Select end of characters  $\gg$    $\gg$  Select effects menu  $\gg$    $\gg$  Change effects  Select  and press  $\gg$  **YES** to select the entire text.

Cancel Last Applied Effect

[Text Entry] window  $\gg$    $\gg$    $\gg$  



## Preview Graphic Mail

[Text Entry] window >> >> >> >> クリア or to close preview

## Cancel All Effects

[Text Entry] window >> >> >> >> YES >> (>> )

## Save Graphic Mail as a Template

[Text Entry] window >> Enter text >> >> >> **Template** >> >>

**Save Template** >> >> YES >>

Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template. Save up to 45 templates including downloads. Delete saved templates as needed.

## Download Templates

>> **Template** >> >> **Download Templates** >> >> YES >> >> Follow onscreen instructions

## Create Graphic Mail from a Template

>> **Template** >> >> Select a template >> >>

## Edit a Template

>> **Template** >> >> Select a template >> >> >> **Edit** >> >> Edit text >> (twice) >> YES >>

## Edit Title of a Template

>> **Template** >> >> Select a template >> >> **Edit Title** >> >> Edit title >>

## Delete Templates

>> **Template** >> >> Select a template >> >> **Delete** >>

- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> >> YES >>
- To select *Delete Selected* >> **Delete Selected** >> >> Select templates >> >> >> YES >>
- To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> YES >>



## Receiving/Opening Messages

### Start Here

[Message List] .....P. 5-7

[Message] window ..... P. 5-8

[Mail List] .....P. 5-8

### Receiving Messages

#### Manually Retrieve Messages

**Retrieve New** **Received Result window opens** **Mail** **Select a message**

Press **[Y]** or press and hold **[クリア]** to cancel message retrieval.

Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.

### Checking Messages

#### Retrieve Complete S! Mail

**Inbox** **Select a folder** **Select an S! Mail notification**

An S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the message text.

Use this procedure when *Message Download* under *S! Mail Settings* is set to *Manual*.

#### Delete S! Mail from Server

**Inbox** **Select a folder** **Select an S! Mail notification** **Delete** **Notification, Server Mail or Notifi./Server** **YES**

#### Check Message Information

[Message List] **Mail Info**

This procedure is available only in Inbox Message List window.

### Server Message Operations

#### Update Mail List

[Mail List] **Mail List**

#### Switch Mail List Views

[Mail List] **List Setting** **Subject, Name or Address**

#### Check Server Message Information

[Mail List] **Select a message** **Mail Info**



## Forward a Server Message

[Mail List] >> Select a message >>  
 >> **Forward** >>  >> To >>   
 >> Enter address >> 

## Delete Server Messages

[Mail List] >> Select a message >>  
 >> **Delete** >>   
 ● To select *Delete This*  
 >> *Delete This* >>  >> **YES** >>   
 ● To select *Delete Selected*  
 >> *Delete Selected* >>  >> Select  
 messages >>  >>  >> **YES** >>   
 ● To select *Delete All*  
 >> *Delete All* >>  >> Enter Security  
 Code >>  >> **YES** >> 

## Check Server Memory Status

 >> **Server Mail** >>  >> **Server  
Mail Memory** >> 

## Managing/Using Messages

### Start Here

[Folder List] ..... P. 5-10  
 [Message List] ..... P. 5-10  
 [Message] window ..... P. 5-10  
 [Inbox Folder List] ..... P. 5-11  
 [Inbox Message List] ..... P. 5-11  
 [Received Message] window .. P. 5-11  
 [Sent Message] window ..... P. 5-11

### Managing Messages

#### Protect a Message

[Message] window >>  >>  
**Protect ON/OFF** >> 

 If a message is protected, this  
 procedure cancels protection.

## Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] >> Select a message  
 >>  >> **Move** >>  >> **Move  
This, Move Selected or Move All**  
 >>  >> Select a destination  
 folder >>  ( >> Select messages  
 >>  >>  ) >> **YES** >> 

 A message can also be moved to a  
 different folder from Message  
 window.

## Drop Messages into Trash Box

[Message List] >>  >> **Move to  
Trash Box** >>  >> Select a  
 message >>  >>  >> **YES** >> 

 Protected messages and delivery  
 reports cannot be moved to Trash Box.



## Delete Messages

[Folder List] >> [F] >> **Delete All** >> [M] >> Enter Security Code >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

[Message List] >> Select a message >> [F] >> **Delete** >> [M]

- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]
- To select *Delete Selected* >> **Delete Selected** >> [M] >> Select messages >> [M] >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]
- To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> [M] >> Enter Security Code >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

## Delete All Read Messages

[Inbox Folder List] >> [F] >> **Delete Read** >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

[Inbox Message List] >> [F] >> **Delete** >> [M] >> **Delete Read** >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

## Delete All Delivery Reports

[Inbox Message List] >> [F] >> **Delete** >> [M] >> **Delete All Reports** >> [M] >> Enter Security Code >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.

## Delete Attached Files

[Message] window ( >> Select attached files) >> [F] >> **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att. Files** >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

## Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

[M] >> **Tools** >> [M] >> **USIM Operation** >> [M] >> Enter Security Code >> [M] >> **Copy** >> [M] >> **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** >> [M] >> **SMS** >> [M] >> **Inbox** or **Outbox** >> [M] >> Select a folder >> [M] >> Select an SMS message >> [M] >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

## Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

[M] >> **Tools** >> [M] >> **USIM Operation** >> [M] >> Enter Security Code >> [M] >> **Delete** >> [M] >> **USIM** >> [M] >> **SMS** >> [M] >> **Inbox** or **Outbox** >> [M] >> Select a folder >> [M] >> Select an SMS message >> [M] >> [M] >> **YES** >> [M]

## Change Message Color

[Message List] >> Select a message >> Press and hold [X]

Each time you press and hold [X], the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Black



## Add a Folder

[Folder List] >>  >> **Add Folder**  
 >>  >> Enter folder name >>   
 >> **YES** >>  >> **Address Sort,**  
**Subject Sort, Reply Impossible,**  
**Send Impossible or Unregistered**  
**Add.** >>  >> Make auto Sort  
 settings >>  >> **YES or NO** >> 

 Select **NO** and press  when you do not want to make Auto Sort settings to the folder.

## Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] >> Select a folder >>  
 >> **Edit Folder Name** >>  >>  
 Edit folder name >> 

 Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

## Change Order of Folders

[Folder List] >> Select a folder >>  
 >> **Sort Folder** >>  >> Select a  
 position >> 

 The order of preinstalled folders cannot be changed.

## Delete a Folder

[Folder List] >> Select a folder >>  
 >> **Delete Folder** >>  >> Enter  
 Security Code >>  >> **YES** >> 

 Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted.

 This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder.

 Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

## Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List] / [Message List] >>  
 >> **No. of Messages** >> 

 The total number of messages, and the number of unread and protected messages in a folder can be checked from Folder List.

The number of messages in a folder can be checked from Message List window.

## Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold  or press and hold  >> Select an entry >> 

## Using Messages

### Edit a Sent Message

 >> **Outbox** >>  >> Select a  
 folder >>  >> Select a sent  
 message >>  >> Edit address,  
 subject and text >> 



### Edit & Send a Draft Message

**» Draft** **»** **»** Select a message **»** **»** Edit address, subject and text **»**

### Forward a Message

[Received Message] window **»** **» Reply/Forward** **»** **» Forward** **»** (twice) **»** Enter address **»**

The subject and text can also be edited.

Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

### Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message] window **»** **» Address List** **»** **»** Select an e-mail address/phone number **»** **» Save Address** **»** **» YES** **»** **» Phone** or **USIM** **»** **»** Select saving option **»** ( **»** Search Phone Book **»** Select an entry **»** ) **»** Edit each item **»**

Select an address to save to Phone Book when the message has multiple recipients.

### Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message] window **»** Select a phone number **»** **» Voice Phone** or **Video Call** **»** **» Dial** **»**

### Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message] window **»** Select an e-mail address **»** **» Compose S! Mail** **»**

### Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message] window **»** Select a URL **»** **» Yahoo! Keitai** or **PC Site Browser** **»**



## Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member

[Message] window >> Select an e-mail address/phone number >> >> **Save Address** >> >> **Phonebook** or **Blog/Mail Member** >>

- Save to Handset
  - >> **Phone** >> >> Select store method >> ( >> Search Phone Book >> Select Phone Book >> ) >> Edit items >> ( >> YES or NO >> ) ( >> Enter entry number >> )
- To Save to USIM Card
  - >> **USIM** >> >> Select store method >> ( >> Search Phone Book >> Select Phone Book >> ) >> Edit items >> ( >> Overwrite or Add >> >> YES or NO >> )
- To add to Blog/Mail Member
  - >> Select Blog/Mail Member to add >> Select an item ( >> YES >> )

## Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] >> >> Press and hold

- When Mail List Disp. is set to **2 Lines**, view toggles in the order Name → Address.
- When **Mail List Disp.** is set to **1 Line**, or to **1 Line+Body**, the view cycles as follows: Subject → Name → Address

## Change Font Size of Text

[Message] window >> Press and hold

## Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] >> >> **Search Mail** >> >> **Search Sender, Search Receiver or Search Subject** >> ( >> Select a search criterion >> ) >> Select an address, enter address or subject >>

- Narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.

## Sort Messages

[Message List] >> >> **Sort** >> >> Select a criterion >>

- This procedure can be combined with the **Filter** operation below.

## Filter Messages

[Message List] >> >> **Filter** >> >> Select a criterion >>

- This procedure can be combined with the **Sort** operation above.

## Reset Message List View to Default

[Message List] >> >> **Display All** >>

- This procedure returns the message list view that has been changed by search, sort or filter operation to its original view.



### Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Inbox Message List] >>  >>  
*Read All* >>  >> *YES* >> 

### Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Outbox Message] window >>   
>> *Disp. Report* >> 

 Only available in Message window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.



# Internet

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>
<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> .....	<b>6-3</b>
Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
<b>PC Site Browser</b> .....	<b>6-5</b>
PC Site Browser .....	6-5
Connecting to PC Websites .....	6-5
<b>Page Operations</b> .....	<b>6-8</b>
Navigating Pages .....	6-8
Jumping to Next or Previous Page.....	6-8
Selecting Links and Other Items.....	6-8
<b>Bookmarks &amp; Saved Pages</b> .....	<b>6-10</b>
Using Bookmarks .....	6-10
Using Saved Pages.....	6-10
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>6-12</b>
Connecting to the Internet .....	6-12
Page Operations.....	6-13
Bookmarks & Saved Pages.....	6-15

# 6

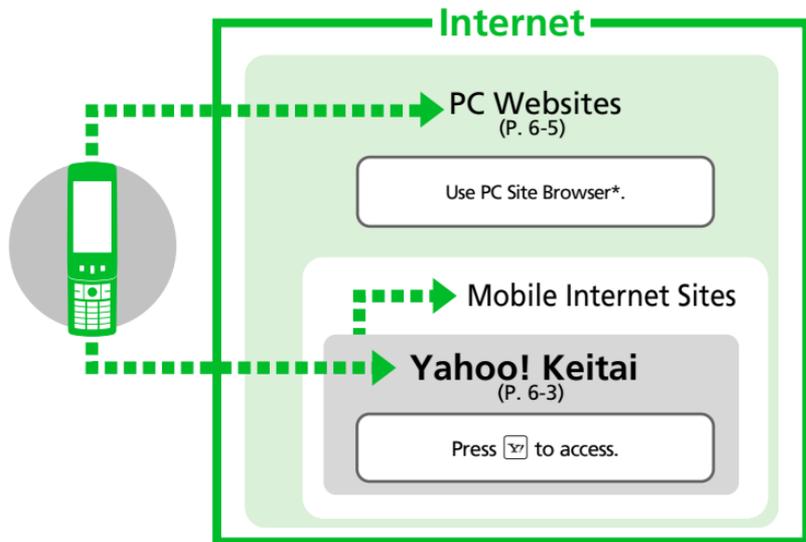


# Overview

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Browse PC websites using PC Site Browser.

\*Separate subscription required for Internet access.

6  
Internet



### Transmission & Information Fees

Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

### About Security

Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

\* When **Warning Messages** is set to **ON**, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.



## Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1



Web Page

2 Select an item

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

3 to exit the Internet   
**YES**

## Using Access History

1 Press and hold **History**



History List

2 Select a record

## Entering URLs

1 Press and hold **Enter URL**



Enter URL Window

2 **<NEW>** **Enter URL**   
 **OK**

### Tip

- A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Yahoo! Keitai

- ❖ Switch to PC Site Browser
- ❖ Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu  
(👉 P. 6-12)

#### History

- ❖ Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- ❖ Check a URL in History
- ❖ Delete Records in History  
(👉 P. 6-12)

#### Entering URLs

- ❖ Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- ❖ Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- ❖ Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- ❖ Delete Entered URL Records  
(👉 P. 6-12)

#### Root Certificates

- ❖ Check Certificate Details
- ❖ Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid  
(👉 P. 6-13)

## Customize

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- ❖ Clear Cache
- ❖ Delete Cookies
- ❖ Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- ❖ Set Whether to Send Referer
- ❖ Enable/Disable Cookies
- ❖ Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- ❖ Check Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings
- ❖ Initialize Memory Status of Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser
- ❖ Reset Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings  
(👉 P. 14-26)



## PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



PC Site Browser Window

## About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of PC Screen and Small Screen:

PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically.

Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

## Connecting to PC Websites

- 1 Press and hold **PC Site Browser**



PC Site Browser Menu

- 2 **Home** ( **YES** or **NO** **Select an item**



Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.



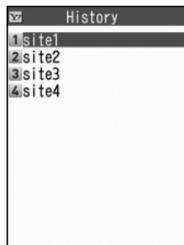
Web Page

- 3 to exit the Internet **YES**



## Using URL History

- 1 [PC Site Browser Menu] >> **History** >>



History List

- 2 Select a record >>  ( >> **YES** or **NO** >>  )

## Entering URLs

- 1 [PC Site Browser Menu] >> **Enter URL** >>



Enter URL Window

- 2 **<NEW>** >>  >> **Enter URL** >>  >> **OK** >>  ( >> **YES** or **NO** >>  )

## More Features

### Advanced

#### PC Site Browser

- ❖ Switch Page Layout Types
- ❖ Return to Home

(👉 P. 6-12)

#### History

- ❖ Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- ❖ Check a URL in History
- ❖ Delete Records in History

(👉 P. 6-12)

#### Entering URLs

- ❖ Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- ❖ Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- ❖ Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- ❖ Delete Entered URL Records

(👉 P. 6-12)

### Customize

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- ❖ Clear Cache
- ❖ Delete Cookies
- ❖ Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number



- ❖ Set Whether to Send Referer
- ❖ Enable/Disable Cookies
- ❖ Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- ❖ Check Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings
- ❖ Initialize Memory Status of Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser
- ❖ Reset Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings

(👉 P. 14-26)

### PC Site Browser

- ❖ Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers

(👉 P. 14-27)



## Navigating Pages

### Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use  to scroll page.

### Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

**1**  to select a frame

**2**  **Frame In** 

Navigate through the frame as you would a page.

**To Exit Frames**

 **Frame Out** 

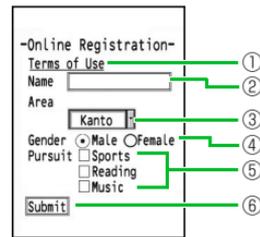
## Jumping to Next or Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press , select **History Back** or **History Forward** and press  to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

● Network connection is made when the cache is full.

## Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.



- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| <b>①</b> | <b>Link</b><br>Select a link and press  to access the linked page.   |
| <b>②</b> | <b>Text Box</b><br>Select a text box and press  to open a text entry window to enter text.   |
| <b>③</b> | <b>Pull-down Menu</b><br>Select a pull-down menu and press  to open a list of options. Use  to select an item and press  . |



④	<b>Radio Button</b> Use  and press  to select only one item from a range of options.  indicates the item is selected.
⑤	<b>Checkbox</b> Use  and press  to select multiple items from a range of options.  indicates the item is selected.
⑥	<b>Command Button</b> Select a command button and press  to activate the assigned function.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Page Operations

- ❖ Reload Page
- ❖ Save Images/Melodies in a Page
- ❖ Save Background Image of a Page
- ❖ Send URL of a Page by Mail
- ❖ Call a Phone Number in a Page
- ❖ Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page
- ❖ Access Another Page from a URL in a Page
- ❖ Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book
- ❖ Change Font Size of a Page
- ❖ Zoom Page In/Out
- ❖ Jump to Top/End of a Page
- ❖ Change Character Code of a Page
- ❖ Play Flash® from the Beginning
- ❖ Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page
- ❖ Show Key Guidance

( P. 6-13)

### Customize

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- ❖ Set Scroll Unit/Speed

- ❖ Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies

( P. 14-26)

#### Yahoo! Keitai

- ❖ Set Font Size
- ❖ Set Flash® Sound On/Off

( P. 14-27)

#### PC Site Browser

- ❖ Set Page Layout

( P. 14-27)



## Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

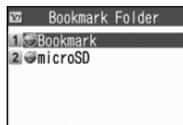
### Saving URLs to Bookmark

- 1 [Web Page] **Bookmark** **Add Bookmark** **YES**

- 2 Select a folder

### Accessing Pages from Bookmark

- 1 Press and hold **Bookmark**

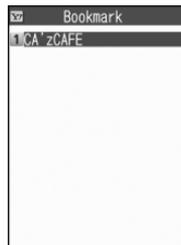


Bookmark Folder List Window

### From PC Site Browser

Press and hold **PC Site Browser** **Bookmark**

- 2 Select a folder



Bookmark List Window

- 3 Select a bookmark

### Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page:
  - Bookmark** **Bookmark List** **Select a folder** **Select a bookmark**
- CA'z CAFE is pre-saved by default.

## Using Saved Pages

Save an open page to Saved Pages to view the page at a later time without connecting to the Internet.

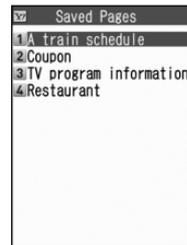
- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- Viewable content is page as it was saved.

### Saving a Page

- 1 [Web Page] **Saved Pages** **Add Saved Pages** **YES**

### Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Press and hold **Saved Pages**



Saved Pages List Window



### 2 Select a page >>

#### Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:

>> *Saved Pages* >> >> *Saved Pages List* >> >> Select a page >>

### More Features

#### Advanced

##### Bookmarks

- ❖ Edit a Title
- ❖ Edit a URL
- ❖ Send a Bookmark by Mail
- ❖ Check Number of Bookmarks
- ❖ Create a Folder
- ❖ Edit a Folder Name
- ❖ Change Order of Folders
- ❖ Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- ❖ Delete a Folder
- ❖ Delete Bookmarks

( P. 6-15)

##### Saved Pages

- ❖ Edit a Title
- ❖ Protect Saved Pages
- ❖ Check Number of Saved Pages
- ❖ Delete Saved Pages

( P. 6-17)



## Connecting to the Internet

### Start Here

- [Web Page] ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-5
- [History List] ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-6
- [Enter URL] window ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-6

### Yahoo! Keitai

#### Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] >> [P] >> **Switch to PC**  
 >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ] ( >> **YES** or **NO**  
 >> [ ] )

#### Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] >> [P] >> **Yahoo!**  
**Keitai** >> [ ]

### PC Site Browser

#### Switch Page Layout Types

[Web Page] >> [P] >> **Change**  
**Disp. Mode** >> [ ]

The page layout toggles between PC screen and Small screen.

#### Return to Home

[Web Page] >> [P] >> **Home** >> [ ]

### History

#### Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] >> Select a record >>  
 [P] >> **Add Bookmark** >> [ ] >> **YES**  
 >> [ ] >> Select a folder >> [ ]

#### Check a URL in History

[History List] >> Select a record >>  
 [P] >> **URL** >> [ ]

### Delete Records in History

[History List] >> Select a record >>  
 [P] >> **Delete** >> [ ]

- To select *Delete This*  
 >> **Delete This** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete Selected*  
 >> **Delete Selected** >> [ ] >> Select  
 records >> [ ] >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete All*  
 >> **Delete All** >> [ ] >> Enter  
 Security Code >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

### Entering URLs

#### Access a Page from an Entered URL Record

[Enter URL] window >> Select a  
 record >> [ ] >> **OK** >> [ ]



## Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record

[Enter URL] window >> Select a record >> >> Select URL entry field >> >> Edit URL >> >> OK >>

## Send an Entered URL Record by Mail

[Enter URL] window >> Select a record >> >> **Compose Message** >> >> Enter address, subject and text >>

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

## Delete Entered URL Records

[Enter URL] window >> Select a record >> >> **Delete** >>

- To select *Delete This* >> *Delete This* >> >> YES >>
- To select *Delete Selected* >> *Delete Selected* >> >> Select records >> >> >> YES >>
- To select *Delete All* >> *Delete All* >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> YES >>

## Root Certificates

### Check Certificate Details

>> **Settings** >> >> **Connection Settings** >> >> **Certificate** >> >> Select a certificate >>

## Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

>> **Settings** >> >> **Connection Settings** >> >> **Certificate** >> >> Select a certificate >> >> **Valid/Invalid** >>

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

## Page Operations

### Start Here

[Web Page] .....P. 6-3, P. 6-5

### Reload Page

[Web Page] >> >> **Reload** >>



## Save Images/Melodies in a Page

[Web Page] >> >> **Save File** >> >> **Object** >> >> ( >> Select a file) >> >> **Save** >> >> **YES** >> >> ( >> Select a folder >> >> **YES** or **NO** >> >> )

To play a melody, select *Play* and press .

To check file properties, select *Property* and press .

## Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] >> >> **Save File** >> >> **Background Image** >> >> >> **Save** >> >> **YES** >> >> ( >> Select a folder) >> ( >> **YES** or **NO** >> >> )

To check file properties, select *Property* and press .

## Send URL of a Page by Mail

[Web Page] >> >> **Convenient Tools** >> >> **Compose Message** >> >> **Attach URL** >> >>

Enter address, subject and text >>



Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

## Call a Phone Number in a Page

[Web Page] >> Select a phone number >> >> **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** >> >> **Dial** >>

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

## Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page

[Web Page] >> Select an e-mail address >> >> **Compose S! Mail** >>

## Access Another Page from a URL in a Page

[Web Page] >> Select a URL >>

## Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book

[Web Page] >> Select a phone number/e-mail address >> >> **Add to Phone Book** >> >> **YES** >> >> **Phone** or **USIM** >> >> **New, Add** or **Overwrite** >> >> Edit each item >> >> ( >> **Overwrite** or **Add** >> >> ( >> **YES** or **NO** >> >> ( >> Enter entry number >> >>

## Change Font Size of a Page

[Web Page] >> >> **Change Font Size** >> >> Select a font size >>

PC Site Browser's page layout must be set to Small Screen.



## Zoom Page In/Out

[Web Page] >> [F5] >> **Zoom** >> [ ]  
 >> Select a magnification >> [ ]  
 PC Site Browser must be set to PC Screen.

## Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] >> [F5] >> **Convenient Tools** >> [ ] >> **Head of Sentence** or **End of Sentence** >> [ ]

## Change Character Code of a Page

[Web Page] >> [F5] >> **Convenient Tools** >> [ ] >> **Change CHR Code** >> [ ] >> Select a character code >> [ ]  
 Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

## Play Flash® from the Beginning

[Web Page] >> [F5] >> **Convenient Tools** >> [ ] >> **Replay** >> [ ]  
 Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

## Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

[Web Page] >> [F5] >> **Convenient Tools** >> [ ] >> **Site Info** >> [ ] >> **Title, URL or Certificate** >> [ ]

## Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] >> [F5] >> **Help** >> [ ]  
 This procedure is only available when using PC Site Browser.

## Bookmarks & Saved Pages

### Start Here

- [Bookmark Folder List] window ..... P. 6-10
- [Bookmark List] window ..... P. 6-10
- [Saved Pages List] window ..... P. 6-10

### Bookmarks

#### Edit a Title

[Bookmark List] window >> Select a bookmark >> [F5] >> **Edit Title** >> [ ] >> Edit title >> [ ]

#### Edit a URL

[Bookmark List] window >> Select a bookmark >> [F5] >> **Edit URL** >> [ ] >> Edit URL >> [ ]



## Send a Bookmark by Mail

[Bookmark List] window >> Select a bookmark >> >> **Compose Message** or **Attach to Mail** >> >> Enter address, subject and text >>



**Compose Message:** Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted at the top of the text.  
**Attach to Mail:** Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the bookmark file attached.

## Check Number of Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] window or [Bookmark List] window >> >> **No. of Bookmarks** >>

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List window; and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List window.

## Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] window >> >> **Add Folder** >> >> Enter folder name >>

## Edit a Folder Name

[Bookmark Folder List] window >> Select a folder >> >> **Edit Folder Name** >> >> Edit folder name >>

## Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] window >> Select a folder >> >> **Sort Folder** >> >> Select a position >>

The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

## Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] window >> Select a bookmark >> >> **Move** >> >> **Move This, Move Selected or Move All** >> >> Select a destination folder >> (>> Select bookmarks >> >> **YES** >>

## Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] window >> Select a folder >> >> **Delete Folder** >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> **YES** >>

This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.

## Delete Bookmarks

■ To Delete All Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] window >> >> **Delete All** >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> **YES** >>

■ To Delete Bookmarks in a Folder

[Bookmark List] window >> Select a bookmark >> >> **Delete** >>

- To select **Delete This** >> **Delete This** >> >> **YES** >>
- To select **Delete Selected** >> **Delete Selected** >> >> Select bookmarks >> >> >> **YES** >>
- To select **Delete All** >> **Delete All** >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> **YES** >>



## Saved Pages

### Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] window >>  
Select a saved page >> [P] >> **Edit Title** >> [■] >> Edit title >> [■]

### Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window >>  
Select a saved page >> [P] >>  
**Protect ON/OFF** >> [■]

 Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

### Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window >> [P]  
>> **No. of Pages** >> [■]

## Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window >>  
Select a saved page >> [P] >>

### Delete >> [■]

- To select **Delete This**  
>> **Delete This** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]
- To select **Delete Selected**  
>> **Delete Selected** >> [■] >> Select saved pages >> [■] >> [☑] >> **YES** >> [■]
- To select **Delete All**  
>> **Delete All** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

 Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.





# Camera

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>7-24</b>
Viewfinder.....	7-3	During Shooting .....	7-24
<b>Basics</b> .....	<b>7-6</b>	After Shooting .....	7-25
BI-DO-RI Mode .....	7-6	After Shooting Framed Images.....	7-26
Photo Mode.....	7-8	Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer .....	7-27
Movie Mode .....	7-10		
<b>Various Camera Features</b> .....	<b>7-13</b>		
Continuous Mode .....	7-13		
Add Frames to Images .....	7-14		
Auto Timer .....	7-14		
<b>Camera Menu</b> .....	<b>7-16</b>		
Changing Settings.....	7-16		
<b>Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer</b> .....	<b>7-19</b>		
Checking Still Images .....	7-19		
Playing Videos.....	7-21		
Uploading Still Images & Videos to Blog.....	7-23		

# 7

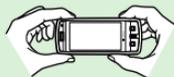


Capture still images and videos with built-in camera.

## Shoot Still Images/Videos

### Camera Style/Cellular Style

Shoot like a camera with handset closed (Camera Style, P. 7-3), or like a cellular phone with handset open (Cellular Style, P. 7-4).



(Camera Style)



(Cellular Style)

### BI-DO-RI

Optimal mode for portrait shots (P. 7-6).

### Auto Focus (AF)

Adopts Continuous AF. Maintains focus automatically, enabling shooting with minimal lag once you press the shutter.

### Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer

View still images and videos with handset closed.

### Blog Upload

Upload photos and text to an SNS or blog.

Send by S! Mail



Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones



SoftBank Handsets



PCs

- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Image blurring may occur when Image Stabilizer is **OFF**. Setting Image Stabilizer to **Auto** is recommended.
- Some points/lines may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click, Auto Timer tone, and Auto Focus locked tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.
- You may hear a low hum when using Camera\*, but this is normal.
- When shooting under fluorescent lighting, faint streaking may appear in Display.
- If Camera is activated over a set number of times while out-of-range, Camera becomes unavailable. Activate Camera again after moving to a location with signal reception.

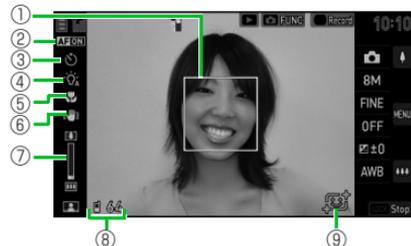
\* Auto focusing (Auto Focus, shooting, focus lock), camera activation, etc.



## Viewfinder

Camera settings are shown by indicators. Some can be selected to change settings (P. 7-16).

### ● Landscape View (Camera Style)



BI-DO-RI, Photo and Continuous Shooting Viewfinder



Movie Viewfinder

## Indicators

①	Focus Frame (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) White: Appears when Auto Focus set Green: Focus successful Red: Focus failed [ ] AF <b>ON</b> and in Macro [ ] AF <b>ON</b> and with face detection [ ] Face detection when AF <b>ON</b> and with face detection
②	AFChange (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) [AF ON] ON [AF OFF] OFF
③	Auto Timer [ON] ON No indicator: OFF
④	Light [Auto] Auto [ON] ON No indicator: OFF
⑤	Macro [Macro ON] Macro ON No indicator: Macro OFF
⑥	Image Stabilizer (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Movie) [Auto] Auto No indicator: OFF

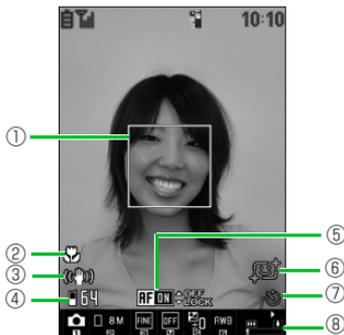
⑦	Zoom Status [Level 1 to Level 16]
⑧	Select to Save (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) [Phone] Phone [microSD] microSD Number of Savable Files (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) White: 11 or more Yellow: 10 or less Red: No memory space
⑨	Select to Save (Movie) [Phone] Phone [microSD] microSD Storage Capacity (Movie) Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
⑨	BI-DO-RI (BI-DO-RI) [BI-DO-RI Mode] BI-DO-RI Mode
⑩	Shooting Status (Movie) [STBY] Standby [REC] Shooting
⑪	Quality Setting (Movie)* [Long Dur. Mode] Long Dur. Mode [Normal] Normal [Fine Mode] Fine Mode [Super Fine Mode] Super Fine Mode



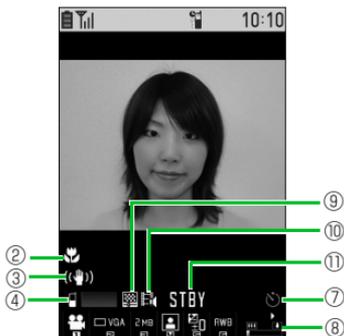
- ⑫ Movie Type Set (Movie)
  - Normal
  - Video
  - Voice

\* *Fine Mode* and *Super Fine Mode* are available when *VGA(Video L)* or *QVGA(Video S)* are selected for Select Size.

## ● Portrait View (Cellular Style)



BI-DO-RI, Photo and Continuous Shooting Viewfinder



Movie Viewfinder

## Indicators

①	<p>Focus Frame (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial)</p> <p>White: Appears when Auto Focus set</p> <p>Green: Focus successful</p> <p>Red: Focus failed</p> <p>[ ] AF <b>ON</b> and in Macro</p> <p>[ ] AF <b>ON</b> and with face detection</p> <p>□ Face detection when AF <b>ON</b> and with face detection</p>
②	<p>Macro</p> <p>Macro ON</p> <p>No indicator: Macro OFF</p>
③	<p>Image Stabilizer (BI-DO-RI, Photo, and Movie)</p> <p>Auto</p> <p>No indicator: OFF</p>



④	Select to Save (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) Phone  microSD Number of Savable Files (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) White: 11 or more Yellow: 10 or less Red: No memory space Select to Save (Movie) Phone  microSD Storage Capacity (Movie) Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
⑤	AFchange (BI-DO-RI, Photo and Serial) ON OFF
⑥	BI-DO-RI (BI-DO-RI) BI-DO-RI Mode
⑦	Auto Timer ON No indicator: OFF
⑧	Zoom Status Level 1 to  Level 16

⑨	Quality Setting (Movie)* Long Dur. Mode Normal Fine Mode Super Fine Mode
⑩	Movie Type Set (Movie) Normal Video Voice
⑪	Shooting Status (Movie) Standby Shooting

\* **Fine Mode** and **Super Fine Mode** are available when **VGA(Video L)** or **QVGA(Video S)** are selected for Select Size.



Shoot like a digital camera with handset closed, or like a conventional cellular phone with handset open.

### Tip

- Still images and videos you shoot are automatically saved. When this function is set off (see P. 14-33), select whether to save or delete after shooting.
- Still images and videos can be mirror displayed or uploaded to a blog.

### Tip

- Time may be required for shot images to appear.
- Depending on shooting conditions, faces may not be effectively detected.
- For best results when shooting portraits, observe the following.
  - Remove glasses/sunglasses, masks, hats, and other items that partially block face.
  - Subject's hair should not cover the face.
  - Subject should look straight into Camera and should not tilt head.
- In the following cases, BI-DO-RI effect may not be apparent or images may appear unnatural.
  - Subject has a beard
  - Poor shooting conditions, such as camera shake, out of focus, inadequate exposure or shadowed face

## Using Camera Style

- 1 With Handset closed, press and hold



BI-DO-RI Viewfinder

- 2 Display person to shoot Shoot and save still image.

### Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	(Top)
Zoom (Wide angle)	(Bottom)
Camera menu display/confirm	
Camera menu selection	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Light <sup>1</sup>	Press and hold
AF LOCK <sup>2</sup>	Half-press

## BI-DO-RI Mode

Shoot stunning portraits of people.

- Still images are saved to **Camera** under **My Picture** in Data Folder. See P. 14-33 for details on changing the save destination to Memory Card.
- Auto-tracking face focus is on and automatically focuses on faces.
- Set **AFChange** to **ON** to automatically focus on faces.



Function menu	
Toggle BI-DO-RI and Photo	Press and hold
Previous window	
End Camera	Press and hold

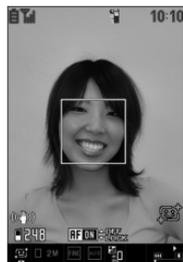
- Pressing and holding will cycle through *Auto*, *ON*, and *OFF*.
- AF locks when pressed halfway. Discontinue pressing to cancel.

## Using Cellular Style

### 1 With handset open, press and hold

#### ■ To Activate From Main Menu

- >>** *Camera* **>>** **>>** *BI-DO-RI*  
**>>**



BI-DO-RI Viewfinder

### 2 Display person to shoot **>>**

- or

Shoot and save still image.

## ● Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
Camera menu	
Light <sup>1</sup>	
AFchange	
AF LOCK <sup>2</sup>	or Half-press
Function menu	
Toggle BI-DO-RI and Photo	Press and hold
Toggle Camera mode	
Adjust Brightness	
Help	
Previous window	
End Camera	

- Pressing will cycle through *Auto*, *ON*, and *OFF*.
- Applies AF Lock when lightly pressed half-way. Discontinue pressing to cancel.

**Tip**

- Access BI-DO-RI from a Shortcut (P. 2-5).

**Photo Mode**

Optimal setting for subjects other than people, such as scenery.

- The still images shot are saved to **Camera** under **My Picture** in Data Folder. See P. 14-33 for details on changing the save destination to Memory Card.
- Make the following settings to automatically detect and focus on faces.
  - Select Size: **WVGA(Wallpaper)** or higher
  - Best Shot: Any of **Auto Mode Select**, **Person**, **Person & Night** and **Best Shot OFF**
  - AFchange: **ON**

**Using Camera Style****1 With Handset closed, press**

- **To Activate From Quick Launcher**  
 (Top), (Bottom) or to activate Quick Launcher ▶ Select



Photo Viewfinder

**2 Display subject to shoot ▶▶**

Shoot and save still image.

**Available Functions**

Zoom (Telescopic)	(Top)
Zoom (Wide angle)	(Bottom)
Camera menu display/confirm	
Camera menu selection	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Light <sup>1</sup>	Press and hold
AF LOCK <sup>2</sup>	Half-press
Function menu	
Toggle BI-DO-RI and Photo	Press and hold
Previous window	
End Camera	Press and hold

- 1 Pressing and holding will cycle through **Auto**, **ON**, and **OFF**.
- 2 Applies AF Lock when lightly pressed halfway. Discontinue pressing to cancel.



## Quick and Normal Shooting

### Quick Shooting

When using Photo Mode in Camera style, press shutter all the way (not half-way) to shoot. Image Stabilizer and Best Shot are set off, enabling you to shift to your next shot more quickly.

- Available when **Auto Save Set** is set to **ON**.

### Normal Shooting

Press the shutter halfway to lock Auto Focus, then all the way to shoot. Shoot more pleasing shots together with Image Stabilizer and Best Shot.

- Sound is emitted during Auto Focus Lock.
- Set Auto Focus Lock off by setting **AFchange** to **OFF** or setting Best Shot to **Night View**. There is no sound made for locking, so slowly press the shutter all the way to shoot.

## Using Cellular Style

### 1 With Handset open, press and hold

#### ■ To Activate From Main Menu

- ▶▶ **Camera** ▶▶ ▶▶ **Photo** ▶▶



Photo Viewfinder

### 2 Display subject to shoot ▶▶

- or

Shoot and save still image.

## Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
Camera menu	
Light <sup>1</sup>	
AFchange	
AF LOCK <sup>2</sup>	or Half-press
Function menu	
Toggle BI-DO-RI and Photo	Press and hold
Toggle Camera mode	
Select Size	
Quality Setting	
Best Shot	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance <sup>3</sup>	
Help	
Previous window	
End Camera	



- 1 Pressing will cycle through *Auto*, *ON* and *OFF*.
- 2 Applies AF Lock when lightly pressed halfway. Discontinue pressing to cancel.
- 3 Available when *Best Shot OFF* is set for *Best Shot*.

## Movie Mode

Shoot videos with or without audio, or even audio-only videos.

- Videos are saved to *Camera* under *Videos* in Data Folder. See P. 14-33 for details on changing the save location to Memory Card.

## Using Camera Style

- 1 With Handset closed, press (Top), (Bottom) or to activate Quick Launcher **▶▶** Select **▶▶**



Movie Viewfinder

## 2 Display subject to shoot ▶▶



Shooting begins.

## 3

Shooting ends and video is saved.

## ● Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	(Top)
Zoom (Wide angle)	(Bottom)
Camera menu display/confirm	
Camera menu selection	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Light*	Press and hold
Function menu	
Previous window	
End Camera	Press and hold

\* Pressing and holding will cycle through *Auto*, *ON* and *OFF*.



## Using Cellular Style

- 1 **Camera** **Movie**



Movie Viewfinder

- 2 **Display subject to shoot**



Shooting begins.

- 3 or

Shooting ends and video is saved.

## Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
Camera menu	
Light*	
Function menu	
Toggle Camera mode	
Select Size	
File Size Setting	
Select Scene	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance	
Help	
Previous window	
End Camera	

\* Pressing will cycle through **Auto**, **ON** and **OFF**.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### During Shooting

- ❖ Shoot Up Closer
- ❖ Turn Auto Focus On/Off
- ❖ Switch Image Color Tone
- ❖ Check Memory Space
- ❖ Change Video Types
- ❖ Set Image Stabilizer

P. 7-24

#### After Shooting

- ❖ Upload Still Image/Video to Blog
- ❖ Open an Image as Mirror Image
- ❖ Save an Image as Mirror Image
- ❖ Edit Video Title

P. 7-25

### Customize

#### Video Settings

- ❖ Reduce Flicker
- ❖ Set Shutter Sound
- ❖ Set View When Shooting With Handset Closed

P. 14-31



### File Storage

- ❖ Toggle Whether to Automatically Save Still Image/Video
- ❖ Set Still Image/Video Save Destination  
( P. 14-33)



## Continuous Mode

Shoot a sequence of up to 10 still images in a single shutter release.

- See P. 14-32 for setting the interval and number of still images.

### Tip

- *VGA(Wallpaper)* and *QVGA(Wallpaper)* are available for *Select Size*.

## Using Camera Style

Use (Top) or (Bottom) for menu and setting selections.

- 1** [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder]

**▶▶ Select** or **▶▶**



Menu Selection Window

- 2** Select **▶▶**



Continuous Viewfinder

- 3** Display subject to shoot **▶▶**



Shoot and save all still images.

## Using Cellular Style

- 1** **▶▶ Camera ▶▶** **▶▶ Serial ▶▶**



Continuous Viewfinder

- 2** Display subject to shoot **▶▶**



Shoot and save all still images.



## Add Frames to Images

Shoot with an overlay.

- Add a frame with the following settings.

Camera mode: *Photo*

Select Size: *WVGA(Wallpaper), VGA(Wallpaper), QVGA(Wallpaper)*

## Using Camera Style

Use (Top) or (Bottom) for menu and setting selections.

- [Photo Viewfinder]**
  - Select Frame**
  - Select folder**
  - Select frame**



Frame Viewfinder

- Display subject to shoot**



Shoot and save still image.

## Using Cellular Style

- [Photo Viewfinder]**
  - Select Frame**
  - Select folder** **Select frame**



Frame Viewfinder

- Display subject to shoot**



Shoot and save still image.

## Tip

- Press to confirm frame selection. Press again to rotate the frame 180°.

## Auto Timer

- Shoot during Auto Timer countdown by pressing or .
- Auto Timer goes off when shooting ends.

## Using Camera Style

Use (Top) or (Bottom) for menu and item selections.

- [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder], [Continuous Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder]**
  - Auto Timer**
- ON** **Set time with** (Top) or (Bottom)



### 3 Display subject to shoot >>



Auto Timer starts and Camera Indicator flashes. Five seconds before shooting, handset emits a tone and flashes faster.

Shoot and save still image. For videos, shooting starts.

#### ■ When shooting Video



Video shooting ends and video is saved.

## Using Cellular Style

**1** [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder],  
[Photo Viewfinder],  
[Continuous Viewfinder] or  
[Movie Viewfinder] >> >>  
**Auto Timer** >>

**2** **ON** >> >> Enter time >>

### 3 Display subject to shoot >>



Auto Timer starts and Camera Indicator flashes. Five seconds before shooting, handset emits a tone and flashes faster.

Shoot and save still image. For videos, shooting starts.

#### ■ To Cancel Auto Timer Shooting



#### ■ When shooting Video



Video shooting ends and video is saved.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### During Shooting

- ❖ Shoot Up Closer
- ❖ Turn Auto Focus On/Off
- ❖ Switch Image Color Tone

P. 7-24

#### After Shooting

- ❖ Open an Image as Mirror Image
- ❖ Save One Continuous Still Image
- ❖ Save Several Continuous Still Images
- ❖ Save All Continuous Still Images
- ❖ Save Continuous Still Images as Original Animation

P. 7-25

#### After Shooting Framed Images

- ❖ Change Frame Before Saving

P. 7-26

### Customize

#### Camera Settings

- ❖ Set Shooting Interval/Number of Still Images for Continuous Mode

P. 14-31



# Camera Menu

Change settings from Camera menu. Settings differ with each Camera mode.

### Tip

- In Photo Mode or Continuous Mode, *White Balance* is available when *Best Shot OFF* is selected for *Best Shot*.

## Changing Settings

### Using Camera Style

Use (Top) or (Bottom) for menu and setting selections.

- [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder], [Continuous Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder]**



Menu Selection Window

### 2 Select menu



Menu Selection Window

Press to cancel menu selection.

### 3 Select setting

Press to cancel the setting.

### Indicators and Settings



BI-DO-RI, Photo and Continuous Viewfinder



Movie Viewfinder

### Indicators

①	CHG Camera-mode
	BI-DO-RI  Photo
	Serial  Movie
	Bar Code Reader



②	Select Size (Photo/Serial) <sup>1 2</sup> <b>8M</b> 8M(A3 Size) <b>4M</b> 6M Wide(A3 Size) <b>5M</b> 5M(A3 Size) <b>3M</b> 3M(A4 Size) <b>2M</b> 2M(2L Size) <b>1M</b> 1M(L Size) <b>WVGA</b> WVGA(Wallpaper) <b>VGA</b> VGA(Wallpaper) <b>QVGA</b> QVGA(Wallpaper)
	Select Size (Movie) <b>VGA</b> VGA(Video L) <b>QVGA</b> QVGA(Video S) <b>QCIF</b> QCIF(Mail L) <b>SubQCIF</b> SubQCIF(Mail S)
③	Quality Setting (Photo/Serial) <sup>3</sup> <b>FINE</b> Fine <b>NOR</b> Normal
	File Size (Movie) Mail Attachment <b>2MB</b> 2MB Long Time
④	Best Shot (Photo/Serial) <sup>4 5</sup> <b>AUTO</b> Auto Mode Select Person       Scenery Night View     Person & Night Sports       Best Shot OFF
	Select Scene (Movie) Person       Scenery

⑤	Brightness -2-2 to  +2+2
⑥	White Balance (Photo, Serial and Movie) <sup>6</sup> <b>AWB</b> AWB(Auto) Fine       Cloudy Light Bulb Fluorescent Lamp

- Select Size is fixed at **2M** in BI-DO-RI Mode.
- VGA(Wallpaper)** and **QVGA(Wallpaper)** are available in Continuous Mode.
- Fixed at **Fine** in BI-DO-RI Mode.
- Fixed at **Auto Mode Select** in BI-DO-RI Mode.
- Night View** and **Person & Night** are not available in Continuous Mode.
- In Photo Mode or Continuous Mode, settable when **Best Shot OFF** is selected for **Best Shot**.

## Using Cellular Style

- [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder], [Continuous Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder]



Menu Selection Window

- Press to select Menu Indicator
- Press to select setting
- Press Press to cancel the setting.



## ● Indicators and Settings



BI-DO-RI, Photo and Continuous Viewfinder



Movie Viewfinder

## Indicators

①	CHG Camera-mode BI-DO-RI  Photo Serial  Movie Bar Code Reader
②	Select Size (Photo/Serial) <sup>1 2</sup> <input type="checkbox"/> 8M 8M(A3 Size) <input type="checkbox"/> 6M 6M Wide(A3 Size) <input type="checkbox"/> 5M 5M(A3 Size) <input type="checkbox"/> 3M 3M (A4 Size) <input type="checkbox"/> 2M 2M (2L Size) <input type="checkbox"/> 1M 1M (L Size) <input type="checkbox"/> WVGA WVGA (Wallpaper) <input type="checkbox"/> VGA VGA (Wallpaper) <input type="checkbox"/> QVGA QVGA (Wallpaper)
	Select Size (Movie) <input type="checkbox"/> VGA VGA (Video L) <input type="checkbox"/> QVGA QVGA (Video S) <input type="checkbox"/> QCIF QCIF (Mail L) <input type="checkbox"/> SubQCIF SubQCIF (Mail S)
③	Quality Setting (Photo/Serial) <sup>3</sup> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fine <input type="checkbox"/> Normal
	File Size (Movie) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mail Attachment  2MB <input type="checkbox"/> Long Time

④	Best Shot (Photo/Serial) <sup>4 5</sup> Auto Mode Select Person  Scenery Night View  Person & Night Sports  Best Shot OFF
	Select Scene (Movie) Person  Scenery
⑤	Brightness -2 to  +2
⑥	White Balance (Photo, Serial and Movie) <sup>6</sup> AWB(Auto) Fine  Cloudy Light Bulb Fluorescent Lamp

- Select Size is fixed at **2M** in BI-DO-RI Mode.
- VGA(Wallpaper)** and **QVGA(Wallpaper)** are available in Continuous Mode.
- Fixed at **Fine** in BI-DO-RI Mode.
- Fixed at **Auto Mode Select** in BI-DO-RI Mode.
- Night View** and **Person & Night** are not available in Continuous Mode.
- In Photo Mode or Continuous Mode, settable when **Best Shot OFF** is selected for **Best Shot**.



View still images and videos. Access them even when handset is closed.

- This function browses the folder set with Camera's save settings (P. 14-33). See P. 7-27 for how to switch folders.

## Tip

- Pressing activates the viewer window suited to the current Camera mode.
- Images read in to handset may not display properly.

## Checking Still Images

### Using Camera Style

1 Press with handset closed

- To Activate From Quick Launcher  
 (Top), (Bottom) or to activate Quick Launcher  
 ▶ Select ▶



Snap Viewer (3D)

Still images appear together.

■ To Toggle Snap Viewer

▶▶ ▶▶ *Layout Change* ▶▶ ▶▶ *Thumbnail, 1 Picture* or *3D* ▶▶

● Default Setting: *Thumbnail*



Snap Viewer (Thumbnail)



Snap Viewer (1 Picture)

2 Select still image with (Top) or (Bottom)

The selected still image appears.

■ Returning to Snap Viewer

▶▶



### ● Available Keys in Snap Viewer

Select still image	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Display still image	
Function menu	
End Snap Viewer	

### ● Available Keys When a Still Image Is Displayed

Toggle zoom/full view	
Toggle still image	In full view  (Top) or  (Bottom)
Zoom in/out	In zoom view  (Top) or  (Bottom)
Function menu	
End Snap Viewer	Press and hold

## Using Cellular Style

1 Press with handset open

■ To Activate From Main Menu

>> Camera >> >> Snap Viewer >>



Snap Viewer (3D)

Still images are displayed together.

■ To Toggle Snap Viewer

>>

Toggle through *Thumbnail*, *1 Picture* and *3D* with each press.

● Set to *Thumbnail* by default.



Snap Viewer (Thumbnail)



Snap Viewer (1 Picture)



## 2 Press to select still image

### ■ To Delete Still Images

- To select **Delete This**

▶▶ ▶▶ **Delete This** ▶▶ ▶▶

**YES** ▶▶

- To select **Delete All**

▶▶ ▶▶ **Delete All** ▶▶ ▶▶

Enter Security Code ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES**

▶▶

## 3

Display selected still image

### ■ Returning to Snap Viewer

▶▶

## ● Available Keys in Snap Viewer

Select still image <sup>1</sup>	
Display still image	
Toggle display <sup>2</sup>	
Function menu	
End Snap Viewer	or

1 Available when display is **1 Picture** or **3D**.

2 Toggles each time pressed.

## ● Available Keys When a Still Image Is Displayed

Toggle zoom/full view	
Rotate still image	In full view
Toggle still image	In full view
Scroll	In zoom view
Zoom in/out	In zoom view or
Function menu	
End Snap Viewer	

## Playing Videos

- See P. 9-3 for the playback window for videos.

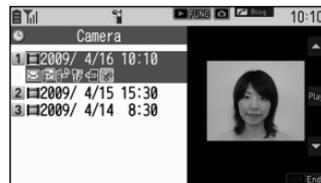
## Using Camera Style

### 1 (Top), (Bottom) or

to activate Quick

Launcher ▶▶ Select

▶▶



Movie Viewer

Videos are displayed as a list.

### 2 Select video with (Top) or (Bottom) ▶▶

The selected video plays.



## ● Available Keys in Movie Viewer

Select video	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Play video	
Function menu	
End Movie Viewer	

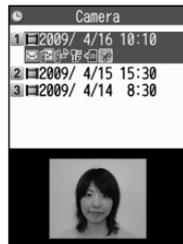
## ● Available Keys When Video Is Playing

Play/pause	
Adjust volume	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Play next video	Press and hold  (Bottom)
Play from start or play previous video	Press and hold  (Top)
End play	
End Movie Viewer	Press and hold

## Using Cellular Style

- See P. 9-3 for playback window in cellular style.

- 1** **▶▶ Camera** **Movie Viewer**



Movie Viewer

Videos are displayed as a list.

- 2** Press to select video

### ■ To Delete Videos

- To select **Delete This**  
 ▶▶ ▶▶ **Delete This** ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶
- To select **Delete Selected**  
 ▶▶ ▶▶ **Delete Selected** ▶▶   
 ▶▶ Select video ▶▶ ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

- To select **Delete All**  
 ▶▶ ▶▶ **Delete All** ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

- 3**

The selected video plays.

## ● Available Keys in Movie Viewer

Select video	
Play video	
Toggle thumbnail*	
Function menu	
End Movie Viewer	or

\* Show/hide toggle each time pressed.



## ● Available Keys When Video Is Playing

Play/pause	
Adjust volume	
Play next video	
Play from start or play previous video	
Function menu	
End play	
End Movie Viewer	

## Uploading Still Images & Videos to Blog

Upload to a blog from Snap Viewer or Movie Viewer.

- You must add an upload e-mail address beforehand to Blog/Mail Member (P. 5-4).
- You may not be able to upload depending on video image size.

### From Snap Viewer

- 1 From [Snap Viewer], select still image**
- 2 Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down or VGA Scale Down**  
 ( Check image )
- 3 Select Blog/Mail Member** **▶▶ Create and send S! Mail**

### From Movie Viewer

- 1 From [Movie Viewer], select video**
- 2 Select Blog/Mail Member** **▶▶ Create and send S! Mail**

### More Features

#### Advanced

- Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer
- ❖ Toggle Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer
  - ❖ Toggle Browsed Folder in Snap Viewer or Movie Viewer
  - ❖ Attach/Insert Still Image/Video in S! Mail ( P. 7-27)

#### Customize

- Snap Viewer
- ❖ Hide Guide at Top of Landscape View ( P. 14-34)



## During Shooting

### Start Here

- [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] .....P. 7-6, P. 7-7
- [Photo Viewfinder] .....P. 7-8, P. 7-9
- [Movie Viewfinder] .....P. 7-10, P. 7-11
- [Continuous Viewfinder] ..... P. 7-13

### Shoot Up Closer

- Camera Style  
[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder], [Movie Viewfinder] or [Continuous Viewfinder] >> >> **Macro ON** >>
  - Cellular Style  
[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder], [Movie Viewfinder] or [Continuous Viewfinder] >> >> **Macro ON** >>
- Select **Macro OFF** to cancel **Macro ON**.

### Turn Auto Focus On/Off

- Camera Style  
[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder] or [Continuous Viewfinder] >> >> **AFchange** >> >> **ON** or **OFF** >>
- Cellular Style  
[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder] or [Continuous Viewfinder] >>

### Switch Image Color Tone

- Camera Style  
[Photo Viewfinder], [Movie Viewfinder] or [Continuous Viewfinder] >> >> **Camera Settings** >> >> **Color Mode Set** >> >> Select tone >>
- Cellular Style  
[Photo Viewfinder], [Movie Viewfinder] or [Continuous Viewfinder] >> >> **Camera Settings** >> >> **Color Mode Set** >> >> Select tone >>

### Check Memory Space

- Cellular Style  
[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder] >> >> **Memory Info** >>

### Change Video Types

- Camera Style  
[Movie Viewfinder] >> >> **Movie Type Set** >> >> **Normal, Video** or **Voice** >>
- Cellular Style  
[Movie Viewfinder] >> >> **Movie Type Set** >> >> **Normal, Video** or **Voice** >>



## Set Image Stabilizer

- Camera Style

[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder] >> >> **Image Stabilizer** >> >> **Auto** or **OFF** >>

- Cellular Style

[BI-DO-RI Viewfinder], [Photo Viewfinder] or [Movie Viewfinder] >> >> **Image Stabilizer** >> >> **Auto** or **OFF** >>

## After Shooting

If Auto Save Set is set off, a preview appears after shooting in BI-DO-RI, Photo, Movie or Continuous mode (P. 14-33). The following functions are available.

## Upload Still Image/Video to Blog

- Cellular Style

[BI-DO-RI Preview], [Photo Preview] or [Movie Preview] window >> >> **Blog Upload** >> (>> **Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down** or **VGA Scale Down** >> ) >> **Select Blog/Mail Member** >> >> **Create and send S! Mail**

You must add an upload e-mail address beforehand to Blog/Mail Member (P. 5-4).

You may not be able to upload depending on video image size.

## Open an Image as Mirror Image

- Camera Style

[BI-DO-RI Preview] or [Photo Preview] window >> >> **Mirror Display** or **Normal Display** >>

- Cellular Style

[BI-DO-RI Preview], [Photo Preview] or [Continuous Preview] window >> >> **Mirror Display** or **Normal Display** >>

## Save an Image as Mirror Image

- Camera Style

[BI-DO-RI Preview] or [Photo Preview] window >> >> **Mirror Save** >>

- Cellular Style

[BI-DO-RI Preview] or [Photo Preview] window >> >> **Mirror Save** >>

## Edit Video Title

- Cellular Style

[Movie Preview] window >> >> **Edit Title** >> >> **Edit title** >>

## Save One Continuous Still Image

- Camera Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> (Top) or (Bottom) to select still image >> >> >> **Save** or **Mirror Save** >>

- Cellular Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> **Select still image** >> >> >> **Save** or **Mirror Save** >>



## Save Several Continuous Still Images

- Camera Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> [ ] (Top) or [ ] (Bottom) to select still image >> [ ] >> Repeat step >> [ ] >> **Save or Mirror Save** >>



To deselect a still image, reselect and press [ ].

- Cellular Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> Select still image >> [ ] >> Repeat step >> [ ] >> **Save or Mirror Save** >> [ ]



To deselect a still image, reselect and press [ ].

## Save All Continuous Still Images

- Camera Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> Press and hold [ ] >> **Save or Mirror Save** >> [ ]

- Cellular Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> Press and hold [ ] >> **Save or Mirror Save** >> [ ]

## Save Continuous Still Images as Original Animation

- Cellular Style

[Continuous Preview] window >> [ ] >> **Store All&Anime** >> [ ] >> **Save or Mirror Save** >> [ ] >> Select save destination >> [ ]

## After Shooting Framed Images

If Auto Save Set is set off, a preview appears after shooting (P. 14-33). The following functions are available.

### Change Frame Before Saving

- Camera Style

[Frame Preview] window >> [ ] >> **Change Frame** >> [ ] >> Select folder >> [ ] >> Select frame >> [ ] (twice)

- Cellular Style

[Frame Preview] window >> [ ] >> **Change Frame** >> [ ] >> Select folder >> [ ] >> Select frame >> [ ] (twice)



## Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer

### Start Here

[Snap Viewer] .....P. 7-19, P. 7-20

[Movie Viewer] .....P. 7-21, P. 7-22

#### Toggle Snap Viewer/Movie Viewer

- Camera Style

[Snap Viewer] or [Movie Viewer]

▶▶ ▶▶ **Photo/Movie SW** ▶▶

- Cellular Style

[Snap Viewer] or [Movie Viewer]

▶▶ ▶▶ **Photo/Movie SW** ▶▶

#### Toggle Browsed Folder in Snap Viewer or Movie Viewer

- Camera Style

[Snap Viewer] or [Movie Viewer]

▶▶ ▶▶ **Memory SW** ▶▶ ▶▶

**Phone or microSD** ▶▶ ▶▶ Select folder ▶▶

- Cellular Style

[Snap Viewer] or [Movie Viewer]

▶▶ ▶▶ **Memory SW** ▶▶ ▶▶

**Phone or microSD** ▶▶ ▶▶ Select folder ▶▶

#### Attach/Insert Still Image/Video in S! Mail

- Cellular Style (Attach still image)

[Snap Viewer] ▶▶ ▶▶ **Compose Message** ▶▶ ▶▶ **Attach Image** ▶▶

▶▶ **Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down or VGA Scale Down** ▶▶

(▶▶ Check image ▶▶ ) ▶▶ Create and send S! Mail

- Cellular Style (Insert still image)

[Snap Viewer] ▶▶ ▶▶ **Compose Message** ▶▶ ▶▶ **Insert Image** ▶▶

▶▶ **Insert Mail or Add Art Scale Down** ▶▶ (▶▶ Check image ▶▶

) ▶▶ Create and send S! Mail

- Cellular Style (Attach Video)

[Movie Viewer] ▶▶ ▶▶ **Compose Message** ▶▶ (▶▶ **YES** ▶▶ ) ▶▶

Create and send S! Mail

You may not be able to attach depending on video image size.





# TV

<b>About TV</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>8-15</b>
TV Antenna .....	8-3	Channel Settings.....	8-15
TV Windows .....	8-4	Watching TV .....	8-15
<b>Initial Setup</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>	Data Broadcasts .....	8-16
<b>Watching TV</b> .....	<b>8-6</b>	TV Link.....	8-16
Time Shift Playback While Watching.....	8-7	Recording Programs .....	8-17
From Quick Launcher.....	8-7	Playing Programs .....	8-17
Data Broadcasts (Japanese).....	8-8	View/Record Timer .....	8-18
Program Guide.....	8-9		
<b>Recording/Playing Programs</b> .....	<b>8-10</b>		
Recording Programs.....	8-10		
Playing Programs .....	8-10		
<b>View/Record Timer</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>		
Setting View Timer .....	8-13		
Setting Record Timer .....	8-13		





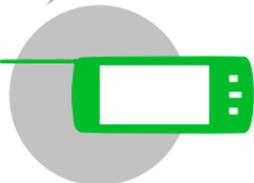
Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones and other information terminals.

- One Seg is available only in Japan. Because other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, watching One Seg Digital TV is not possible outside of Japan.

## One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.

8  
TV



Watch TV in  
Widescreen

### Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-8).

### Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-10).

### View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-13).

### New Message Notification

Sender and subject information appears for new message while TV is active (P. 14-6).

## Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle, or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- If TV is activated over a set number of times while out-of-range, TV becomes unavailable. Activate TV again after moving to a location with signal reception.



- Sufficiently extend TV Antenna to improve signal reception. An inadequate picture may be improved by changing antenna direction, moving handset away from/closer to you, or changing locations.
- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
  - Areas far from signal towers
  - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
  - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:  
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting  
From PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>  
From handset: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Japanese)

### When You First Activate TV

The first time you activate TV, following information appears.

- How to switch between Portrait and Landscape view
  - Functions unavailable in Landscape view
- Read information then press , select **YES**, and press . If **NO** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

### When a Call Arrives While Using TV

When a call arrives or when Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while using TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after the interrupting function ends.

### TV Antenna

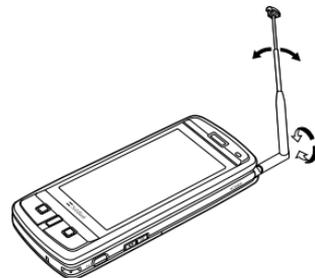
- Do not use force when changing antenna direction.

#### Extend

##### 1 Extend until Antenna stops

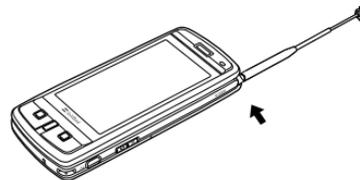


##### 2 Change direction of Antenna



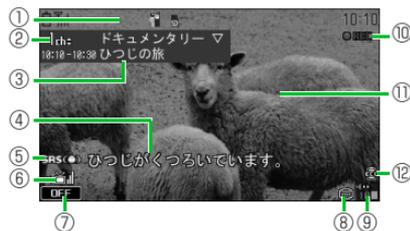
#### Retract

##### 1 Hold lower part of Antenna and push in all the way





## TV Windows



Landscape View



Portrait View

①	Incoming Message Info Information about messages received while watching TV appears in tickers (P. 14-6).
②	Channel (Remote Control No.)
③	Program Title
④	Subtitles
⑤	Appears while Sound Effect is ON (no setting required)
⑥	Signal Strength Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑦	TV Effect <b>OFF</b> Sound Effects OFF <b>CS5.1ch</b> CS5.1ch <b>Auto</b> Auto <b>Live</b> <b>Concert</b> <b>Drama</b> <b>Sports</b> <b>News</b> <b>Variety</b> <b>Movie</b> Suitable for Each Genre <b>Manner</b> Manner Mode
⑧	Receiving Subtitle Information Subtitles Available
⑨	Volume
⑩	Recording Status Recording Timer Recording Activated (Red) Recording Paused Time Shift Status (Green) Paused Normal Speed or Time Shift Playback 1.3x Speed (With Sound) 2x Speed (Without Sound)
⑪	Image
⑫	ECO Mode ECO Mode Active
⑬	Data Broadcast
⑭	TV View Mode Image Mode Data Broadcast Mode



# Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

**1** **TV** **Channel Settings**

**2** **Select Area** **Select area** **Select prefecture/city** **YES**

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

## Tip

- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Channel Settings

- ❖ Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- ❖ Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- ❖ Switch Channel Lists

P. 8-15

### Customize

#### Channel List

- ❖ Change Title of Channel List
- ❖ Delete a Channel List
- ❖ Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- ❖ Delete a Channel

P. 14-28

#### Other Settings

- ❖ Reset Channel Settings

P. 14-30



## Watching TV

- 1** **TV** **Watch TV**



TV Window  
(Landscape View)

Alternatively, activate TV by pressing .

8  
TV

- 2 Use Keypad to select a channel**

Press for channel 10, for channel 11, and for channel 12.

■ **To Change Next/Previous Channel**



■ **To Automatically Search for Receivable Stations**



Press or to stop station search.

- 3** to end TV

- When you select **YES**, use for Landscape view, and for Portrait view.
- Alternatively, press and hold . Follow the same steps to end TV in Portrait view.

**Tip**

- TV volume is "0" when Manner Mode is active and no earphone is connected. Adjust with .

## Available Functions (Handset Open)

Pause or Play <sup>1</sup>	
Save Still Image	
Adjust Volume	
Mute	
Toggle Portrait and Landscape	Press and hold
Toggle Windows <sup>2</sup>	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

- 1 TV viewing will resume in Time Shift playback.
- 2 Available in Portrait view.



## Time Shift Playback While Watching

Resume watching TV even after pausing with playback.

- Time Shift playback is available when you have stopped watching One Seg or you receive a call.
- Time Shift playback is unavailable when *Time Shift Setup* is set to *Auto OFF*.

**1 [TV] window** >>

TV is paused.

**2 When it is possible to resume watching TV** >>

Time Shift playback starts.

■ **To Toggle Playback Speed**



Press to cycle through Normal Speed, 1.3x Speed (With Sound), and 2x Speed (Without Sound).

■ **To End Playback**



### Note

- Up to two minutes of playback data can be stored. Data is overwritten starting from the oldest data. If you resume viewing after pausing for more than two minutes, viewing starts from the beginning of stored data (not from where you paused).

### Tip

- Other channels are unavailable while TV viewing is paused or during Time Shift playback.

### ◎ Handset Closed

**1 [TV] window** >>

TV is paused.

**2 When it is possible to resume watching TV** >>



Time Shift playback starts.

■ **To Toggle Playback Speed**

>> Press and hold

■ **To End Playback**



## From Quick Launcher

- Use Quick Launcher to activate TV from closed position.

**1 Press Front Button** () (Top), ) (Bottom) or

■ **Returning to Standby**

>> or Press and hold

**2 ) (Top) or ) (Bottom) to select** >>



TV Window (Landscape View)

■ **Returning to Standby**

>> Press and hold >> **YES** >>



## Keys in TV Window (Handset Closed)

Still image recording	
Starts/Ends Video recording	Press and hold
Adjust Volume (Volume <low> or <high>)	(Bottom) or  (Top)
Forward channel selection (Station <+>up or <->down)	Press and hold  (Top) or  (Bottom)
Returning to Standby	Press and hold <b>YES</b>

## Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

### 1 [TV] window



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated. Access the Internet from a link to view pages relating to the current program.

### ■Returning to Image Mode



## Available Functions

Select a Link	
Confirm Selection of a Link	
Switch Pages	
Previous Page	<a href="#">クリア</a>
Toggle Windows	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

### Note

- Viewing data broadcasts requires no fees. However, accessing the Internet incurs transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.



## Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.
- Activate TV from Program Guide.

### 1 **TV** **Program Guide**

See Program Guide help for further operations.

Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use. Follow the onscreen instructions.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Watching TV

- ❖ Show Program Information
- ❖ Adjust Brightness
- ❖ Switch Main & Sub Audio
- ❖ Switch Audio Channels
- ❖ Show Current Channel List Information
- ❖ Add Current Station to Channel List
- ❖ Select a Program

P. 8-15)

#### Data Broadcasts

- ❖ Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- ❖ Check Certificate for SSL Page
- ❖ Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast P. 8-16)

#### TV Link

- ❖ Save TV Links
- ❖ Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- ❖ Show Details of a TV Link
- ❖ Show Number of Saved TV Links
- ❖ Delete TV Links P. 8-16)

### Customize

#### Image & Sound

- ❖ Set Subtitle Display
- ❖ Set Sound Effect
- ❖ Set Visual Image Effect
- ❖ Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- ❖ Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV
- ❖ Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV
- ❖ Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- ❖ Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)

P. 14-28)

#### Data Broadcasts

- ❖ Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- ❖ Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- ❖ Set Whether or Not to Show Confirmation Window Again P. 14-29)

#### Other Settings

- ❖ Check TV Settings
- ❖ Reset Channel Settings
- ❖ Clear Data Broadcast Memory
- ❖ Reset TV Settings P. 14-30)



## Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

### 1 [TV] window >> Press and hold

Recording starts.

#### ■ To Capture a Still Image



Captured still images are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

### 2

Recording ends.

#### ■ When Memory Becomes Full

Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

### Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

### Tip

- Recordings and still images can also be saved when handset is closed (P. 8-8).

## Playing Programs

### 1 >> **Data Folder** >> >> **TV** >>

### 2 **Video** >> >> **microSD** >>



Recorded Program List Window

#### ■ To View Captured Still Images

- >> **Image** >> >> Select a folder >>



## 3 Select a file ▶▶



Recorded Program Playback Window

## ■ To Stop Playback

**Tip**

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select **YES** and press .

**Available Keys during Program Playback (Handset Open)**

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	
Mute	
Toggle Portrait and Landscape View	Press and hold
Fast Play	<sup>1</sup>
Frame Forward	during pause
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds <sup>2</sup>	Press and hold
Skip Back 30 Seconds <sup>2</sup>	Press and hold
Toggle SoundEffects	

- 1 Press the key to toggle normal and fast play.
- 2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.

**Available Keys during Program Playback (Handset Closed)**

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	(Top) or  (Bottom)
Skip Back 30 Seconds	Press and hold  (Top)
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds	Press and hold  (Bottom)
Stop Play	



### More Features

#### Advanced

##### Recording Programs

- ❖ Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- ❖ Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- ❖ Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window
- ❖ Check Information on a Recorded Program
- ❖ Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- ❖ Delete Recorded Programs

( P. 8-17)

##### Playing Programs

- ❖ Specify Point to Start Playback

( P. 8-17)

#### Customize

##### Recording Programs

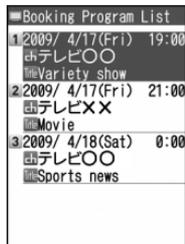
- ❖ Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

( P. 14-30)



## Setting View Timer

- 1 **TV** **Booking Program List**



Booking Program List Window

- 2 **New**



View Timer Setting Window

- 3 **Enter Date** **Enter date and time**

To Select a Date from Calendar  
**Choose Date** Select a date  
 Enter time

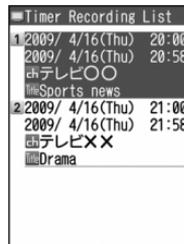
- 4 **Select a channel**

- 5 **ON, ON/Set Time or OFF** ( **Select a time** )

- 6

## Setting Record Timer

- 1 **TV** **Timer Recording List**



Timer Recording List Window

- 2 **New**



Record Timer Setting Window



**3** **Enter Date** **Enter recording start and end time**

■ **To Select a Date from Calendar**  
**Choose Date** Select a date Enter time

**4** **Select a channel**

**5** **ON or OFF**

**6** ( **YES** or **YES (Confirm Once)** )

## When the Set Time Comes

View Timer:

Alarm sounds for five minutes, and recording information and animation appear. Press any key to stop alarm tone.

Record Timer:

At one minute before recording start, a short alarm sounds. Recording information and animation appear, and TV activates. Recording starts at the start time.

### Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### View/Record Timer

- ❖ Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- ❖ Enter Title of Booked Program
- ❖ Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- ❖ Set Timer Alarm Volume
- ❖ Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- ❖ Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & MUSIC Group Function is Active
- ❖ Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- ❖ Change Order of Booked Programs
- ❖ Delete Booked Programs
- ❖ Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- ❖ Check Result of Timer Recording

P. 8-18



## Channel Settings

### Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

>> TV >>  >> Channel Settings >>  >> Automatic >>   
 >> YES >>  >> YES >>  >>  
 Enter title >>

### Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

>> TV >>  >> Channel List >>  
 >> Not Stored >>  >> Channel Settings >>  >> Select Area >>  
 >> Select area >>  >> Select prefecture/city >>  >> YES >>

### Switch Channel Lists

>> TV >>  >> Channel List >>  
 >> Select a channel list >>

## Watching TV

### Start Here

[TV] window ..... P. 8-6

### Show Program Information

[TV] window >>  >> Program Info >>

### Adjust Brightness

[TV] window >>  >> Display Setting >>  >> Brightness >>   
 >> Select a level >>

### Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV] window >>  >> Sound >>  
 >> Main/Sub Sound >>  >>  
 Select an audio output option >>

### Switch Audio Channels

[TV] window >>  >> Sound >>  
 >> Sound Switch >>  >>  
 Select an audio channel >>   
 Sound Switch is available when there is more than one audio channel.

### Show Current Channel List Information

[TV] window >>  >> Channel >>  
 >> Channel Info >>

### Add Current Station to Channel List

[TV] window >>  >> Channel >>  
 >> Add Channel >>  >> YES >>  
  
 Use Add Channel when you find a new station by holding down .



## Select a Program

[TV] window **>>** **>>** *Channel* **>>** **>>** *Tune Service* **>>** **>>** Select a service (program) **>>**

*Tune Service* is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

## Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window **>>** **>>** *Data Broadcast* **>>** **>>** *Back to Data BC* **>>**

## Access Pages/Information from TV Links

**>>** *TV* **>>** **>>** *TV Link* **>>**

Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- Memo information
- Data broadcast site
- Internet content

## Data Broadcasts

### Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window .....P. 8-8

#### Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window **>>** **>>** *Data Broadcast* **>>** **>>** *Reload Contents* **>>**

#### Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode] window **>>** **>>** *Data Broadcast* **>>** **>>** *Show Certificate* **>>**

## TV Link

### Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window... P. 8-8

#### Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode] window **>>** Select an item **>>** ( **>>** *YES* or *YES (By default)* **>>** )

Some TV links may have expiration dates.

#### Show Details of a TV Link

**>>** *TV* **>>** **>>** *TV Link* **>>** **>>** Select a TV link **>>** **>>** *Display Detail* **>>**

#### Show Number of Saved TV Links

**>>** *TV* **>>** **>>** *TV Link* **>>** **>>** **>>** *No. of TV Link* **>>**



## Delete TV Links

■ >> **TV** >> ■ >> **TV Link** >> ■ >> Select a TV link >> [P]

- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■
- To select *Delete Selected* >> **Delete Selected** >> ■ >> Select a TV link >> ■ >> Repeat step of selecting TV link >> ■ >> [P] >> **YES** >> ■
- To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> ■ >> Enter Security Code >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■

## Recording Programs

### Start Here

[Recorded Program List] window ..... P. 8-10

## Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window >> Select a program >> [P] >> **Edit Title** >> ■ >> Edit title >> ■

## Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window >> Select a program >> [P] >> **Initialize Title** >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■

## Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window

[Recorded Program List] window >> [P] >> **Switch List** >> ■ >> **Title** or **Title + Image** >> ■

## Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window >> Select a program >> [P] >> **Show Info** >> ■

## Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] window >> [P] >> **Check Memory** >> ■

## Delete Recorded Programs

- [Recorded Program List] window >> Select a program >> [P]
- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■
  - To select *Multiple-choice* >> **Multiple-choice** >> ■ >> Select a file >> ■ >> Repeat step of selecting file >> [P] >> **Delete** >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■
  - To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> ■ >> Enter Security Code >> ■ >> **YES** >> ■

## Playing Programs

### Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback] window ..... P. 8-11

## Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback] window >> ■ >> [P] >> **Location** >> ■ >> [P] to specify point >> ■



## View/Record Timer

### Start Here

- [Booking Program List] window ..... P. 8-13
- [View Timer Setting] window ..... P. 8-13
- [Timer Recording List] window ..... P. 8-13
- [Record Timer Setting] window ..... P. 8-13

### Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting] window >>> >>> (>>> Select a folder >>> >>> Select a sub folder >>> ) >>> Select an alarm tone >>>

### Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting] window or [Record Timer Setting] window >>> >>> >>> Enter program title >>>

### Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

[View Timer Setting] window or [Record Timer Setting] window >>> >>> >>> **1 Time, Daily** or **Select Day** >>>

When **Select Day** is specified, select days of the week and press .

### Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting] window or [Record Timer Setting] window >>> >>> >>> to adjust volume >>>

### Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting] window >>> >>> >>> **ON** or **OFF** >>>

When **ON** is set, press twice and select **YES** from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

### Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & MUSIC Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting] window >>> >>> >>> **Recording** or **Operation Preferred** >>>

When **Recording** is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended and recording starts. When **Operation Preferred** is set, a confirmation asking whether to start recording appears.

### Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List] window or [Timer Recording List] window >>> Select a booked program >>> >>> Edit each item >>> (>>> **YES** or **YES (Confirm Once)** >>> )

### Change Order of Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] window or [Timer Recording List] window >>> >>> **Sort** >>> >>> Select a criterion >>>



### Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] window or  
[Timer Recording List] window >>  
Select a program >>  >> **Delete** >>



- To select *Delete This*  
>> *Delete This* >>  >> **YES** >> 
- To select *Delete selected*  
>> *Delete selected* >>  >> Select a  
program or recording >>  >>  
Repeat step of selecting program or  
recording >>  >> **YES** >> 
- To select *Delete All*  
>> *Delete All* >>  >> Enter Security  
Code >>  >> **YES** >> 

 Select *Delete past* to delete old bookings.

### Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Timer Recording List] window >>  
 >> **Memory Info** >> 

### Check Result of Timer Recording

 >> **TV** >>  >> **Result Timer Rec**  
>>  >> Select an entry >> 

 Press  to play the recorded program.





# Music Player & S! Appli

<b>About Music Player .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Playback Windows .....	9-3
Downloading Music .....	9-4
<b>Music Playback .....</b>	<b>9-5</b>
Playing Music.....	9-5
Playing Music From Quick Launcher .....	9-6
Using Playlists .....	9-6
<b>S! Appli.....</b>	<b>9-8</b>
About S! Appli.....	9-8
Downloading S! Appli .....	9-8
Activating S! Appli .....	9-9
About モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) .....	9-9
Activating モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) .....	9-9
Searching Mobile Organizer Contents ..	9-10
<b>Advanced Features .....</b>	<b>9-11</b>
Music Player.....	9-11
S! Appli .....	9-13

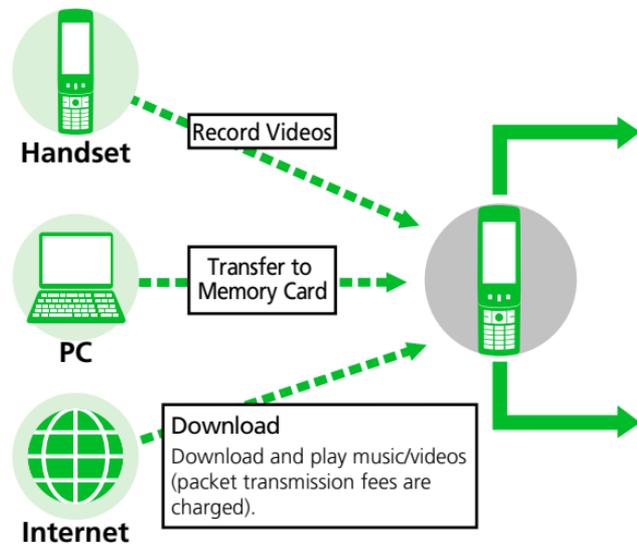


# About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Videos can also be played with Music Player.
- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.

- Play not possible with insufficient battery charge.
- Alarm notification, received calls, etc. while playing will pause play.



## Play & Organize Songs/Videos on Handset

### Save Music

#### Inbox

Save downloaded and transferred music from Memory Card.

#### Memory Card

Save music moved/copied from handset or transferred from PC.

### Save Videos

#### Inbox\*

Save shot/downloaded videos, and videos transferred from Memory Card.

#### Camera\*

Save recorded videos.

#### Memory Card

Save videos moved/copied from handset or transferred from PC.

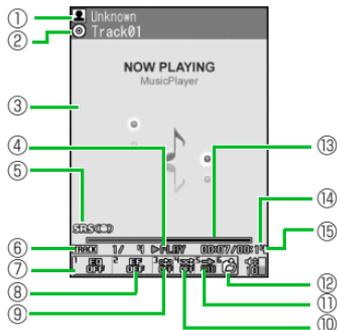
\* Saved videos can be edited as well.

### Tip

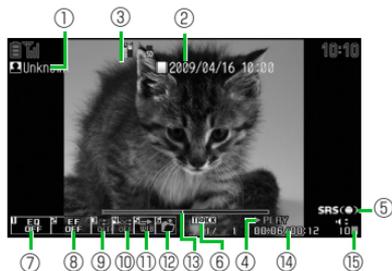
- Be sure to save music files from PC to Memory Card in the following folder.  
¥PRIVATE¥MYFOLDER¥My Items¥Music



## Playback Windows



Normal Screen Mode



Full Screen Mode  
(For Video Playback)

①	Artist Name <Creator>*
②	Title
③	Playback Image <Video>*
④	Playback Status ▶PLAY Play    ⏸PAUSE Pause ▶▶FF Fast Forward    ◀◀REW Rewind ▶SLOW Slow Play    ⏩PLAY Fast Play
⑤	Sound Effect on (always on)
⑥	Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder)
⑦	Equalizer ⏻EQ Equalizer OFF Pop Live Vocal Break CLight Wante Ballad Rap Concert Rock Kiss Loud For each genre of music USER1 USER2 USER3 User settings
⑧	Sound Effect ⏻EF Effect OFF TruMute CS51ch Bassmnb Singsive Clearblue Beat LceRge ReRime LiveHell For different song styles USER1 USER2 USER3 User settings
⑨	Repeat Mode ⏻OFF    🔁 Repeat All 🔁 Repeat One

⑩	Shuffle Mode 🔁 ON    ⏻OFF
⑪	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑫	Song/file Selection Change the playback song or file.
⑬	Playback Position ⏪ indicates the current playback position. Use ⏩ to move playback position during pause.
⑭	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑮	Volume

\* Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.



## Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1  >> **MUSIC** >>  >>  
**Download Music** >>  >>  
**YES** >>

■ To Search for Songs to Download  
>> **Search Music** >>  >> **YES** >>

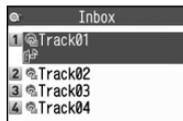
2 Follow onscreen instructions



## Playing Music

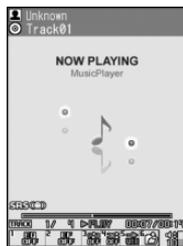
1 **MUSIC**

2 Select a folder



Song List Window

3 Select a song



Music Player Playback Window  
(Video Player Playback Window)

### Tip

• To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:

⇨ *Data Folder* ⇨ ⇨ *Videos*  
⇨ ⇨ Specify a video to play

## Available Keys during Playback

### ⊙ While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	
Play Next Song or Video	
Rewind	Press and hold
Fast Forward	Press and hold
Move Playback Position	during pause
Select a Song or File	or <b>6</b>

Set Equalizer	<b>1</b> <sup>1</sup>
Set Sound Effect	<b>2</b> <sup>1</sup>
Set Repeat Mode	<b>3</b> <sup>1</sup>
Set Shuffle Mode	<b>4</b> <sup>1</sup>
Access the Internet	<b>5</b>
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	<b>9</b>
End Playback	<sup>2</sup>

1 Press the key to toggle settings.

2 Available when playing videos.



## Playing Music From Quick Launcher

- Use Quick Launcher to activate Music Player from closed position.
- Activates in Portrait view for music playback even when handset is closed.

**1** Press Front Button (□ (Top), □ (Bottom) or ⌨)

■ Returning to Standby  
 ▶▶ ⌨ or Press and hold ⌨

**2** □ (Top) or □ (Bottom) to select ⌨ ▶▶ ⌨



Music Player Playback Window  
 (Video Player Playback Window)

### ■ Returning to Standby

▶▶ Press and hold ⌨

## Available Keys in Playback Window

Play/Pause	⌨
Adjust Volume (Volume <high>/<low>)	□ (Top) or □ (Bottom)
Play next song or video	Press and hold □ (Top)
Play from start or play previous song	Press and hold □ (Bottom)
End Music Player	Press and hold ⌨

### Note

- When a song has not yet been played, you must first select the song with handset open before listening.

## Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs in your preferred order, by genre or artists, or just replay your favorite songs.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

### Creating a Playlist

**1** □ ▶▶ **MUSIC** ▶▶ □ ▶▶ **Playlist** ▶▶ □



Playlist List Window

**2** □ ▶▶ **Create Playlist** ▶▶ □

**3** Select a folder ▶▶ □ ▶▶ Select a song ▶▶ □

Repeat this step to specify other songs.

**4** When all songs are specified ▶▶

□ ▶▶ Enter playlist name ▶▶ □



## ■ To Start Playing the Playlist



## Playing a Playlist

### 1 [Playlist List] window ▶▶

Select a playlist ▶▶

### ■ To Play a Playlist from the Beginning

▶▶ Select a playlist ▶▶



Playlist Song List Window

### ■ To Play All Songs

▶▶ *All Tracks* ▶▶ (twice)

### 2 Select a song ▶▶

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Playing Music

- ❖ Resume Playback
- ❖ File Property
- ❖ Repeat
- ❖ Set Preferred Sound Quality
- ❖ Set Preferred Sound Effect
- ❖ Specify Play Start Position
- ❖ Use a Different Function While Playing Music

( P. 9-11)

#### Organizing Songs

- ❖ Set a Song as Ringtone
- ❖ Search for Songs
- ❖ Change Order of Songs
- ❖ Check Volume of Saved Music

( P. 9-12)

#### Playlists

- ❖ Add Songs to Playlist
- ❖ Change Order of Playlist Songs
- ❖ Cancel Playlist Songs
- ❖ Edit a Playlist Name
- ❖ Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist
- ❖ Copy a Playlist

- ❖ Check Playlist Information
- ❖ Delete Playlists

( P. 9-12)

### Customize

#### Playback Window

- ❖ Change Playback Window Mode (Video Playback)
- ❖ Change Design of Playback Window (Song Playback)
- ❖ Set Image Display Size (Video Playback)

( P. 14-35)



## About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

### About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai® compatible S! Appli “Lifestyle-Appli” (P. 11-3). Change Lifestyle-Appli settings as any other S! Appli.

### About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

#### Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

### About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

- 1 **S! Appli** **Information**

## Downloading S! Appli

- 1 **S! Appli** **S! Appli List** **Download S! App** **YES**

- 2 **Select an S! Appli** **(twice)**

- **To Activate S! Appli Right Away** **YES** **Select an S! Appli**

- **To Activate S! Appli Later** **NO**

#### Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 11-3.
- See S! Appli’s Help menu or the download site for operational information.

#### Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable. You will need to download it again.
- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
  - Download the same S! Appli with no Memory Card inserted
  - Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted
 Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.



## Activating S! Appli

- 1 **S! Appli**   
**S! Appli List**



S! Appli List Window

- 2 **Select an application**

- To End S! Appli**  
**End**

### Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. S! Appli resumes when the call ends.

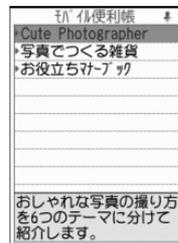
## About モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)

モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) (Japanese) is an S! Appli for getting more enjoyment from camera or to search useful lifestyle information from pre-installed contents. モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) contains the following contents.

Contents	Entries	Publisher
Cute Photographer	42 and 6 columns	翔泳社
写真でつくる雑貨 (Photo-It Crafts)	32	雷鳥社
お役立ちマナーブック (Useful Etiquette)	approx. 800	旺文社

## Activating モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)

- 1 **S! Appli** **S! Appli List** **モバイル便利帳**

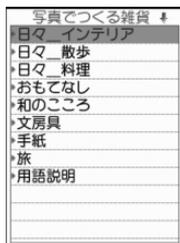


モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) List Window

Cute Photographer～おしゃれな写真が撮れる本～(翔泳社) : ©2008 SHOEISHA Co., Ltd. TERUAKI NAGAMINE  
 写真でつくる雑貨 (雷鳥社) : ©2008 saorin  
 Printed in Japan  
 お役立ちマナーブック (旺文社) : ©旺文社 1989

### Tip

- Alternatively, access from a shortcut (P. 2-5).

**2** Select contents ▶▶ 

Contents Top Menu

**Searching Mobile Organizer Contents**

Search for entries in pre-installed contents by selecting headwords one after another.

<Example> Viewing information for Photo-It Crafts

**1** Select an entry ▶▶ ▶▶  
Select an item ▶▶ 

Mobile Organizer Page

**More Features** **Advanced****S! Appli**

- ❖ Check S! Appli Information
- ❖ Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- ❖ Delete an S! Appli
- ❖ Change Mobile Organizer Font Size P. 9-13

**Customize****When Running S! Appli**

- ❖ Set Sound Volume
- ❖ Set Vibration
- ❖ Set Backlight
- ❖ Set Blinking of Backlight
- ❖ Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- ❖ Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- ❖ Reset Security Settings of S! Appli P. 14-35

**S! Appli Settings**

- ❖ Reset S! Appli Settings
- ❖ Delete All S! Appli

P. 14-36



## Music Player

### Start Here

- [Music Player Playback] window ..... P. 9-5
- [Song List] window ..... P. 9-5
- [Playlist List] window ..... P. 9-6
- [Playlist Song List] window ..... P. 9-7

### Playing Music

#### Resume Playback

■ >> MUSIC >> ■ >> Resume Play >> ■

#### File Property

[Music Player Playback] window >> [P] >> File Property >> ■ >> File Property >> ■  
 View file information.

#### Repeat

[Music Player Playback] window >> [P] >> Action Setting >> ■ >> Repeat Setting >> ■ >> All Repeat or Single Repeat >> ■

#### Set Preferred Sound Quality

[Music Player Playback] window >> [P] >> Action Setting >> ■ >> Sound Effect >> ■ >> Equalizer >> ■ >> Select user setting 1 to 3 >> [x] >> Set level for each wavelength >> ■

- To return sound quality to initial state >> Select user setting 1 to 3 >> [x] (twice)

#### Set Preferred Sound Effect

[Music Player Playback] window >> [P] >> Action Setting >> ■ >> Sound Effect >> ■ >> Effect >> ■ >> Select user setting 1 to 3 >> [x] >> Set level for each effect >> ■

- To set by existing effects >> Select user setting 1 to 3 >> [x] >> [x] >> Select effect >> ■
- To return sound effect to initial state >> Select user setting 1 to 3 >> [x] (twice)

#### Specify Play Start Position

[Music Player Playback] window >> ■ >> Specify play start position with [C] >> ■

#### Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Player Playback] window >> [F] >> Switch to BGM >> ■ >> Activate another function



## Organizing Songs

### Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] window >> Select a song >> >> **Select Ring Tone** >> >> Select an item >>

### Search for Songs

[Song List] window, [Playlist List] window or [Playlist Song List] window >> >> **Search** >> >> **Title** >> >> Enter condition >>   
 Select a song from search results and press to play it.

### Change Order of Songs

[Song List] window or [Playlist Song List] window >> >> **Sort** >> >> Select a criterion >>

### Check Volume of Saved Music

[Song List] window >> >> **Memory Info** >>

## Playlists

### Add Songs to Playlist

[Playlist Song List] window >> >> **Edit Playlist** >> >> **Add Music** >> >> Select a folder >> >> Select songs >> >> >> **YES** >>   
 The songs you specified are added at the end of the playlist.

### Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] window >> Select a song >> >> **Edit Playlist** >> >> **Sort Playlist** >> >> Select a position >>

### Cancel Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] window >> Select a song >> >> **Edit Playlist** >> >> **Release Settings** >>   

- To select **Release This** >> **Release This** >> >> **YES** >>
- To select **Release Selected** >> **Release Selected** >> >> Select songs >> >> >> **YES** >>
- To select **Release All** >> **Release All** >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> **YES** >>

### Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlist List] window >> Select a playlist >> >> **Edit Playlist Name** >> >> Edit playlist name >>

### Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

[Playlist List] window >> >> **Update All Tracks** >> >> **YES** >>



## Copy a Playlist

[Playlist List] window >> Select a playlist >> [F] >> **Copy to Playlist** >> [■]

## Check Playlist Information

[Playlist List] window >> Select a playlist >> [F] >> **Playlist Info** >> [■]

## Delete Playlists

[Playlist List] window >> Select a playlist >> [F] >> **Delete Playlist** >> [■]

- To select *Delete This* >> **Delete This** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]
- To select *Delete Selected* >> **Delete Selected** >> [■] >> Select playlists >> [■] >> [☒] >> **YES** >> [■]
- To select *Delete All* >> **Delete All** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

## S! Appli

### Start Here

[S! Appli List] window..... P. 9-9

[Mobile Organizer Page] ..... P. 9-10

### Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli List] window >> Select an S! Appli >> [F] >> **Properties** >> [■]

### Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

[S! Appli List] window >> [F] >> **Memory Info** >> [■]

### Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli List] window >> Select an S! Appli >> [F] >> **Delete** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

### Change Mobile Organizer Font Size

[Mobile Organizer Page] >> [F] >> **文字サイズ** >> [■] >> **普通 / 小** >> [■]





# Entertainment

<b>S! Quick News</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
Using S! Quick News .....	10-2
<b>S! Info Channel/Weather</b>	
<b>Indicator</b> .....	<b>10-3</b>
Using S! Info Channel .....	10-3
<b>Books</b> .....	<b>10-5</b>
Obtaining Books .....	10-5
Using BookSurfing® .....	10-5
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>10-6</b>
S! Quick News.....	10-6
S! Info Channel.....	10-6
Weather Indicators .....	10-7

10



## Using S! Quick News

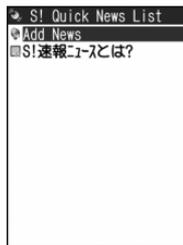
Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Quick News.

## Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

- 1 Press and hold



S! Quick News List Window

- 2 Add News **YES**



- 3 Select an item

Follow onscreen instructions.

## Checking Updated Information

- 1 [S! Quick News List] window

Select an item

- 2 Select information

To Check Next Updated Information

## More Features

### Advanced

S! Quick News

- ❖ Manually Update List
- ❖ Automatically Update List
- ❖ View Descriptions of Registered News
- ❖ Delete Registered News/Items

P. 10-6

### Customize

S! Quick News

- ❖ Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- ❖ Set Ticker Speed
- ❖ Set Information to appear in S! Quick News
- ❖ Hide S! Quick News Images
- ❖ Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

P. 14-37



## Using S! Info Channel

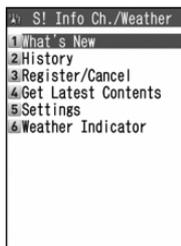
This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather, and other information.

- Transmission fees are incurred.

## Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.

- 1 **Entertainment** **S! Info Ch./Weather**



S! Info Channel Menu

- 2 **Register/Cancel** **YES**

- 3 **Select a contents**

Continue by following onscreen directions to subscribe.

## Checking Latest Information

A shortcut notifies you when new information is received.

- 1 **Shortcut**

Continue by following onscreen directions. Web page operation is the same as for Yahoo! Keitai.

### Tip

- To check from a menu: [S! Info Channel Menu] **What's New**
- To check previous information: [S! Info Channel Menu] **History** **Select a date** **Unread** or read backnumbers are indicated with or .

## Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

### Weather Indicators

	Clear (Daytime)		Later
	Clear (Night)		Partial
	Cloudy		Pollen (Low)
	Rain		Pollen (High)
	Thunder		UV Rays (Low)
	Snow		UV Rays (High)

<Example> Cloudy, partial rain



- Besides the above, indicators for chance of rain, typhoon information, seasonal information, etc. appear.



## Checking Weather Report

- 1 [S! Info Channel Menu] >>
- Weather Indicator** >>  >>
- Weather** >> 

### More Features

#### Advanced

##### S! Info Channel

- ❖ Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- ❖ Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- ❖ Store Background Images from Web Pages
- ❖ Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

 P. 10-6

##### Weather Indicators

- ❖ Manually Update Weather Information

 P. 10-7

### Customize

##### S! Info Channel

- ❖ Set Whether to Display Shortcut for New Received Information
- ❖ Set Font Size for Web Pages
- ❖ Set Font Size for Ticker

 P. 14-37

##### Weather Indicators

- ❖ Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- ❖ Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- ❖ Set Whether to Display Shortcut for Received New Weather Information

 P. 14-38



Download e-comics, e-photo albums, and other CCF file books.

## Obtaining Books

Download books from the Internet.

- Downloaded books are stored in *Books* in Data Folder.
- Some books require you to obtain a contents key (right to use contents).

**1** **» Data Folder** **» Books** **» Download Books** **» YES**

Continue by following onscreen directions to download.

### Tip

- Alternatively, download from BookSurfing®.

## Using BookSurfing®

View e-comics, e-photo albums, etc. (CCF file).

**1** **» Entertainment** **» BookSurfing**

BookSurfing® is activated.

See the Help for BookSurfing® for operation.

### Tip

- Alternatively, activate BookSurfing® by selecting *BookSurfing* from the S! Appli list.



## S! Quick News

### Start Here

[S! Quick News List] window

..... P. 10-2

#### Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List] window >>  
Select an item >> [F] >> **Refresh This** or **Refresh All** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

#### Automatically Update List

[ ] >> **Entertainment** >> **S! Quick News** >> [ ] >> **Settings** >> [ ] >> **Auto Refresh** >> [ ] >> Select an item >> [ ] >> Select an interval, **ON** or **OFF** >> [ ] (twice)

#### View Descriptions of Registered News

[S! Quick News List] window >>  
Select an item >> [F] >> **Outline** >> [ ]

#### Delete Registered News/Items

[S! Quick News List] window >>

Select an item >> [F]

- To select *Delete This*  
>> **Delete This** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]
- To select *Delete All*  
>> **Delete All** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]  
(twice) >> Enter Security Code >> [ ]  
(twice)

## S! Info Channel

### Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu] window

..... P. 10-3

#### Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] window >>  
>> **Get Latest Contents** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

#### Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

[Web Page] >> [F] >> **Save File** >> [ ] (>> **Object** >> [ ]) (>> Select a file) >> [ ] >> **Save** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ] (>> Select a folder >> [ ]) (>> **YES** or **NO** >> [ ])

[ ] Select **Play** and press [ ] to play melody file.

[ ] Select **Property** and press [ ] to check file information.

#### Store Background Images from Web Pages

[Web Page] >> [F] >> **Save File** >> [ ] >> **Background Image** >> [ ] >> **Save** >> [ ] >> **YES** >> [ ]

[ ] Select **Property** and press [ ] to check file information.



## Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[Web Page] >> Select a phone number or an e-mail address >>  >> **Add to Phone Book** >>  >> **YES** >>  >> **Phone** or **USIM** >>  >> **New** or **Add (overwrite)** >>  ( >> Search Phone Book >> Select an entry >>  >> Edit items >>

## Weather Indicators

### Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu] window  
 ..... P. 10-3

## Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] window  
 >> **Weather Indicator** >>  >> **Manual Update** >>  >> **YES** >>





# Tools

<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b> .....	<b>11-2</b>	<b>Alarm</b> .....	<b>11-14</b>
About Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-2	Setting Alarm.....	11-14
Using Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-3	Canceling Alarm .....	11-15
Activating IC Card Lock.....	11-4	<b>Bar Code Reader</b> .....	<b>11-16</b>
<b>Schedule</b> .....	<b>11-6</b>	Scanning Bar Codes .....	11-16
Schedule Window .....	11-6	Checking Scanned Data.....	11-17
Saving Events to Schedule .....	11-6	<b>Text Reader</b> .....	<b>11-18</b>
Checking Saved Events .....	11-7	Scanning Text.....	11-19
<b>To Do List</b> .....	<b>11-9</b>	Checking Scanned Text .....	11-20
Saving Tasks.....	11-9	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>11-21</b>
Checking Saved Tasks .....	11-10	Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-21
Deleting Tasks .....	11-10	Schedule .....	11-21
<b>Text Memo</b> .....	<b>11-11</b>	To Do List .....	11-22
Saving Text Memos .....	11-11	Text Memo .....	11-23
Deleting Text Memos.....	11-11	Alarm.....	11-23
<b>Voice Memo</b> .....	<b>11-12</b>	Bar Code Reader & Text Reader .....	11-23
Recording the Other Party's Voice .....	11-12		
Recording Your Voice .....	11-12		
<b>Calculator</b> .....	<b>11-13</b>		



## About Osaifu-Keitai®

"Osaifu-Keitai®" is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets.

Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

### © Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b>	Cellular phone equipped with "FeliCa" contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data by holding phone up to a reader/writer.
<b>IC Card</b>	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets.
<b>Lifestyle-Appli</b>	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

### Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

## Getting Started

### Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.

- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.



### Registrations/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.

- Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

### Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.



## Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

1 [Home] >> Tools >> [Tools] >> Osaifu-Keitai >> [Osaifu-Keitai] >> Lifestyle-Appli >> [Lifestyle-Appli] >> Download LifeApp >> [Download LifeApp] >> YES >> [YES]

2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli >> [Select] (twice)

■ To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Right Away

>> YES >> [Select] >> Select a Lifestyle-Appli >> [Select]

■ To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Later

>> NO >> [Select]

### Note

- Check the battery level before downloading Lifestyle-Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded Lifestyle-Appli are no longer available.

## Activating Lifestyle-Appli

1 [Home] >> Tools >> [Tools] >> Osaifu-Keitai >> [Osaifu-Keitai] >> Lifestyle-Appli >> [Lifestyle-Appli]



Lifestyle-Appli List Window

2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli >> [Select]

■ To End Lifestyle-Appli

>> [End] >> End >> [End]

### Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

### Tip

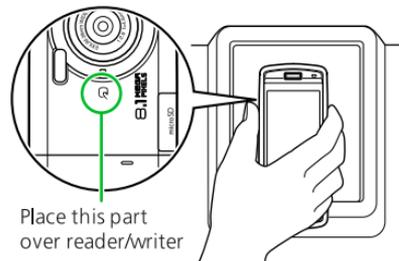
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. Lifestyle-Appli resumes when the call ends.

## Using Osaifu-Keitai®

### Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

1 Hold [Reader/Writer] logo up to a reader/writer >> Check scan result on reader/writer display



Place this part over reader/writer

- Hold handset parallel to the reader/writer. Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

**Note**

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

**Tip**

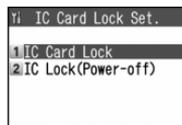
- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between  logo and reader/writer.

## Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to and prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

- 1**   **Tools**   **Osaifu-Keitai**   **IC Card Lock Set.**  

## 2 Enter Security Code



IC Card Lock Setting Window

## 3 IC Card Lock **ON**

-  appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, set IC Card Lock by: Press and hold  in Standby.

### ■ To Set Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off

-  **IC Lock(Power-off)**   **Maintain or IC Card Lock ON**  
- 

### ■ To Cancel IC Card Lock

-  Press and hold  in Standby
-  Enter Security Code 

## Remote Lock

Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

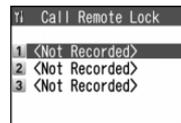
## ① Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

- 1**   **Tools**   **Osaifu-Keitai**   **Call Remote Lock** 

## 2 Enter Security Code

## 3 ON

- To Cancel Call Remote Lock
-  **OFF** 



Call Remote Lock Setting Window



#### 4 <Not Recorded> >> ■ >> Enter Phone Numbers >> ■

- To save numbers from Phone Book, Redial or Received calls
  - >> [F] >> *Look-up Address* >> ■
  - >> *Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls* >> ■ >> Select a number >> ■

- To save a Payphone number
  - >> [F] >> *Payphone* >> ■

#### 5 [Envelope]

### ⊙ Activating Call Remote Lock

#### 1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

- Send Caller ID.

#### 2 Hang up after handset receives the call

#### 3 Within three minutes, repeat 1-2 twice

- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

#### Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

### 🏠 More Features

#### 🌀 Advanced

#### Osaifu-Keitai®

- ❖ Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- ❖ Check Memory Status
- ❖ Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- ❖ Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- ❖ Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

(👉 P. 11-21)

#### ⚙️ Customize

#### Osaifu-Keitai®

- ❖ Set illumination for IC Card
- ❖ Delete all Lifestyle-Appli
- ❖ Set Whether to Enable Opening from Browser

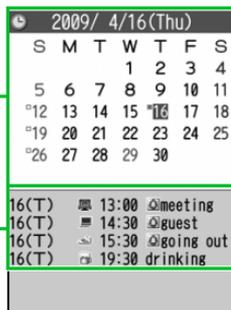
(👉 P. 14-40)



# Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set the alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

## Schedule Window



Schedule Window

① Calendar  
 Blue date: Saturdays  
 Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays  
 \_\_\_: Today  
: Events for the morning  
: Events for the afternoon

② Information Panel  
 Date, day of the week, content type icon, time, and saved content

- Content Type Icon
  - 🕒 (or a user icon) Event
  - 🌞 Holiday
- Event Repetition Icon
  - 📅 Daily event
  - 🔄 Weekly event
  - 📅 Monthly event
  - 📅 Annual event
  - 📅 Event for over a day

## Saving Events to Schedule

● **Schedule** is assigned to by default. See P. 14-39 for how to change the assigned function.

1 **Tools** **Schedule**

2 **Schedule**



Event Edit Window

3 **Enter subject** **Select an icon**

Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates.



## Schedule

4 Enter start/end date and time

5 **1 Time, Daily (D), Weekly (W), Monthly (M) or Annually (Y)**

■ To Specify Days of the Week **Weekly (W)** Put checkmarks to days of the week

6 Select an alarm notification option

■ To Activate Alarm Prior to Event **ON/Set Time** Enter time

7 Select an alarm tone type ( Select a folder Select an alarm tone )

Folders are unavailable when *Clock Alarm Tone* or *OFF* is selected.

8 Enter place

9 Enter details

Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates.

### ⊙ Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears on Display for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Press any key again to end notification message.

### Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

### Adding Holidays

1 [Schedule] window **Holiday**

2 Enter year, month and date

3 **1 Time or Annually (Y)**

4 Enter content

5

## Checking Saved Events

1 **Tools** **Schedule**

2009/ 4/16(Thu)						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11
*12	13	14	15	*16	17	18
*19	20	21	22	23	24	25
*26	27	28	29	30		

16(T)		13:00	meeting
16(T)		14:30	guest
16(T)		15:30	going out
16(T)		19:30	drinking

Schedule Window

■ To Toggle between Weekly View and Monthly View



**2** to select a date with events



Event List Window

**3** Select an event



Event Details Window

## Deleting Events

⊙ **To Delete One Event**

**1** [Event List] window   
 Select an event

**2** **Delete** **Delete This**   
 **YES**

⊙ **To Delete Multiple Events**

**1** [Event List] window

**2** **Delete** **Delete selected**

**3** Select an event

Repeat this step to specify other events.

**4** **YES**

⊙ **To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date**

**1** In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] window or [Event Details] window

**2** **Delete** **Delete Past**   
 Select an item   
 **YES**

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Schedule

- ❖ Sort Events by Icon
- ❖ Check Number of Saved Events
- ❖ Edit an Event
- ❖ Copy an Event
- ❖ Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event
- ❖ Delete All Events
- ❖ Reset Holidays

P. 11-21

### Customize

#### Alarm

- ❖ Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- ❖ Change Alarm Tone

P. 14-3



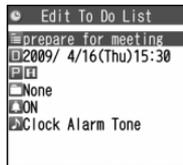
# To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set Alarm to remind you of deadlines.

## Saving Tasks

- 1 **Tools** **To Do List** **New**

- **To Edit a Saved Task**  
 >> Select a task >>



Task Edit Window

- 2 **Enter task**
- 3 **Enter Date** **Enter due date and time**

- **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**  
 >> **Choose Date** >> >> Select a date on Calendar >> >> Enter date/time >>

- **To Cancel a Due Date**  
 >> **No Date** >>

- 4 **Select a priority level** >>

- 5 **Select a category** >>

- 6 **Select an alarm notification option** >>

- **To Activate Alarm Prior to Due Time**  
 >> **ON/Set Time** >> >> Enter time

- 7 **Select an alarm tone type** >> ( >> **Select a folder** >> >> **Select an alarm tone** >> ) >>

Folders are unavailable when *Clock Alarm Tone* or *OFF* is selected.

## Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears on Display for approximately five minutes. Press any key to stop the alarm tone. Press any key again to end notification message.

### Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.



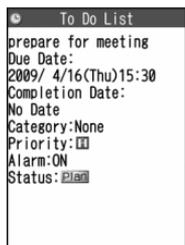
## Checking Saved Tasks

- 1 **Tools** **To Do List**



Task List Window

- 2 Select a task



Task Details Window

### Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g. ).

## Deleting Tasks

### ⊙ To Delete One Task

- 1 [Task List] window Select a task
- 2 **Delete** **Delete This** **YES**

### ⊙ To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List] window
- 2 **Delete** **Delete selected**
- 3 Select a task   
Repeat this step to specify other tasks.
- 4 **YES**

## 🏠 More Features

### 🌀 Advanced

- To Do List
- ❖ Sort Tasks by Category
  - ❖ Change Order of Tasks
  - ❖ Set Task Status
  - ❖ Delete All Tasks

P. 11-22)

### ⚙️ Customize

- Alarm
- ❖ Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
  - ❖ Change Alarm Tone

P. 14-3)



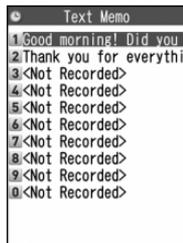
# Text Memo

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

## Saving Text Memos

- 1 **Tools** **Text Memo**



Text Memo List Window

- 2 **<Not Recorded>** **Enter content**

- **To Edit a Saved Text Memo**
  - ▶ Select a text memo
  - Edit content

## Deleting Text Memos

### ◎ To Delete One Text Memo

- 1 [Text Memo List] window **Select a text memo**
- 2 **Delete** **Delete This** **YES**

### ◎ To Delete Multiple Text Memos

- 1 [Text Memo List] window
- 2 **Delete** **Delete selected**
- 3 **Select a text memo** Repeat this step to specify other text memos.
- 4 **YES**

## More Features

### Advanced

Text Memo

- ❖ Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- ❖ Sort Text Memos by Category
- ❖ Check Text Memo Information
- ❖ Delete All Text Memos

( P. 11-23)



The following two types of voice memos can be recorded with Voice Memo:

“Voice memo during a call” to record the other party’s voice during a call; and “Voice memo in Standby” to record your voice in Standby.

- Only one entry, either a voice memo during a call or a voice memo in Standby, can be saved on handset. When a new voice memo is recorded, the previously saved entry is overwritten.
- The available recording time is 20 seconds for both types of voice memos.
- See P. 3-5 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

## Recording the Other Party’s Voice

**1** Press during a call **»»** **Voice Memo** **»»**

A short beep sounds through the earpiece, and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

**■ To Stop Recording**  
**»»**

## Recording Your Voice

**1** **»» Tools** **»»** **»» Voice Memo** **»»**

**2** **YES** **»»** **»» Record your voice**

Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

**■ To Stop Recording**  
**»»**

---

### Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.
-



1 **Tools** **Calculator**

2 Enter numbers with Keypad  
 Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

■ To Calculate Negative Numbers  
 Enter numbers with keypad Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

3   
Result appears.

## Available Functions

Enter Number	0 - 9
+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
× (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Equal)	
Decimal Point	
Cancel Calculation	(クリア) (AC)
Clear Number	(クリア) (C)

### Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.



## Setting Alarm

- 1 **Tools** **Alarm**

Alarm 1/2	
1 Alarm1	ON
6:30 W	
2 Alarm2	OFF
3 Alarm3	OFF
4 Alarm4	OFF
5 Alarm5	OFF

Alarm List

### To View Alarm Entries

- Select an entry

Alarm	
Alarm1	
6:30 W	
SuMoTuWeThFrSa	
Clock Alarm Tone	
Level 4	
Snooze 5times/5min	
Auto Power OFF	

Alarm Details Window

- 2 Select an alarm

Edit Alarm	
Alarm2	
--:--	
1 Time	
Clock Alarm Tone	
Level 4	
Snooze 5times/5min	
Auto Power OFF	

Alarm Setting Window

- 3 Enter title

Title appears in Alarm message.

- 4 Enter time

- 5 **1 Time, Daily**  
 (D) or **Select Day (W)**

- To Specify Days of the Week**  
**Select Day (W)** Put  
 checkmarks to days of the week

- 6 Select an alarm  
 tone type ( Select a  
 folder Select an  
 alarm tone

Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

- 7 to adjust  
 volume

- 8 **ON** Enter  
 number of activation times  
 Enter time interval

- To Cancel Snooze**  
**OFF** Enter ringing  
 duration

- 9 **ON or OFF**



## ◎ Alarm Activation Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm is activated and animation appears on Display. When the auto power-on function is set to **ON** in Alarm Setting window, handset is automatically turned on, if it has been off, to activate the alarm.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone. When Snooze is set to **OFF**, press any key again to cancel the alarm with two short beeps, and return to the window before the alarm activation.

When Snooze is set to **ON**, the alarm sounds repeatedly in the set time interval. Press  to cancel Snooze with two short beeps.

### Note

- The alarm and snooze cancellation beeps do not sound when **Keypad Sound** is set to **OFF**.
- Set the auto power-on function to **OFF** in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, Snooze does not work even if it is set to **ON**.

## Canceling Alarm

- 1 [Alarm List] ▶▶ Select an alarm ▶▶ 

Each time you press , the alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

### Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if the alarm is canceled.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Alarm

- ❖ Cancel All Alarms
- ❖ Edit Alarm Settings

(👉 P. 11-23)

### Customize

#### Alarm

- ❖ Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- ❖ Change Alarm Tone

(👉 P. 14-3)



JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

## About JAN & QR Codes

### ◎ JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers. Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

### ◎ QR Code

A two-dimensional code representing alphanumerics, kanji, kana, or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.

## Scanning Bar Codes

- Position handset camera at a distance of 6 to 8 cm from the bar code.

1 **Tools** **Bar Code Reader**

2 **Frame the bar code in the recognition field**



Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.

┌, ┐, └ and ┘ indicate the corners of the recognition field.

■ **To Cancel Scanning**  
▶ ▶ **OK** ▶

■ **To Adjust Zoom**  
▶ (Zoom out) or (Zoom in)

### ■ To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)

▶▶ **OK** ▶▶ (twice) ▶▶ Scan a QR code

Repeat this step to scan other QR codes. All component QR codes must be scanned in order to access or save scanned data on handset.

### 3 Check scanned data

■ **To Discard Scanned Data**  
▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

4 ▶▶ **Store** ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶ ▶▶ **OK** ▶▶

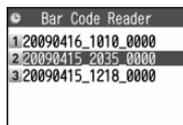
### Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition field.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.



## Checking Scanned Data

**1 [Bar Code Scanning]**  
window >> >> **Reading**  
**Data List** >>



Scanned Bar Code Data List Window

**2 Select an entry** >>



Scanned Bar Code Data Details Window

### Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Using Scanned Data

- ❖ Make a Call
- ❖ Compose a Message
- ❖ Access the Internet
- ❖ Save to Phone Book
- ❖ Save a Bookmark
- ❖ Copy Text
- ❖ Edit Title of Scanned Data
- ❖ Delete Scanned Data

P. 11-24)



Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

## Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.

Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.
-----------	--

## Text Scanning Window



①	Recognition Frame
②	Scan Item Icons <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>名 Name</li> <li>☎ Phone number</li> <li>✉ E-mail address</li> <li>〒 Postal code</li> <li>🏠 Address</li> <li>📄 Memo</li> <li>To Address</li> <li>🗣 Subject</li> <li>📧 Message text</li> </ul>
③	Recognized Text Field
④	Recognition Mode
⑤	Key Guidance
⑥	Negative Mode <i>Nega</i> appears when <i>NEGA/POSI Mode</i> is set to <i>Negative Fix</i> .
⑦	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned



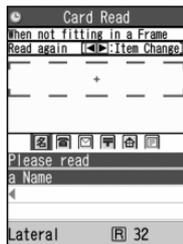
## Scanning Text

- Position handset camera at a distance of 6 to 8 cm from the text.

<Example> Scanning in *Card Read mode*

1 **Tools** **Text Reader**

2 **New** **Select a scan mode**



Text Scanning Window

3 to select a scan item icon  
 ▶▶ Frame text in the recognition frame

### ■ To Adjust Zoom

▶▶ (Zoom in) or (Zoom out)

4

The text is scanned.  
 The recognized text appears.

### ■ To Rescan the Same Text

▶▶ ▶▶ YES ▶▶

### ■ When Scanned Text Overflows Recognized Text Field

▶▶ to scroll the field

### ■ To Save Scanned Text without Correcting It

▶▶

### ■ To Scan Following Text

▶▶ ▶▶ Frame text in the recognition frame (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) ▶▶

### ■ To Scan Another Item

▶▶ ▶▶ to select a scan item icon  
 ▶▶ Frame text in the recognition frame ▶▶

5 ▶▶ **Store** ▶▶

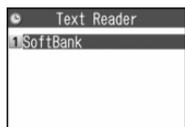
## Tip

- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition frame.
- When *Processing* appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
  - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
  - Decorated characters are scanned.
  - Spaces between characters are uneven.
  - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
  - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.



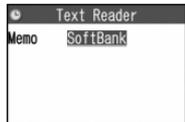
## Checking Scanned Text

- 1 **Tools** **Text Reader** **Reading Data List**



Scanned Text List Window

- 2 **Select an entry**



Scanned Text Details Window

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Scanning Text

- ❖ Correct Scanned Text
- ❖ Edit Scanned Text
- ❖ Set Printing Status of Text
- ❖ Set Guidance OFF/ON
- ❖ Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

P. 11-23

#### Using Scanned Data

- ❖ Make a Call
- ❖ Compose a Message
- ❖ Access the Internet
- ❖ Save to Phone Book
- ❖ Save a Bookmark
- ❖ Search Phone Book
- ❖ Save a Text Memo
- ❖ Copy Text
- ❖ Delete Scanned Data

P. 11-24



## Osaifu-Keitai®

### Start Here

- [Lifestyle-Appli List] window ..... P. 11-3
- [Call Remote Lock Setting] window ..... P. 11-4

#### Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

[Lifestyle-Appli List] window >>  
 Select a Lifestyle-Appli >> [F] >>  
**Properties** >> [■]

#### Check Memory Status

[Lifestyle-Appli List] window >> [F]  
 >> **Memory Info** >> [■]

#### Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

[Lifestyle-Appli List] window >>  
 Select a Lifestyle-Appli >> [F] >>  
**Delete** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

#### Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window >> Select phone number >> [■] >> Change phone number >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■] >> [✉]

#### Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window >> Select phone number >> [F]  
 ● To select *Delete this*  
 >> *Delete this* >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]  
 ● To select *Delete All*  
 >> *Delete All* >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

## Schedule

### Start Here

- [Schedule] window ..... P. 11-6
- [Event Edit] window ..... P. 11-6
- [Event List] window ..... P. 11-8
- [Event Details] window ..... P. 11-8

#### Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule] window, [Event List] window or [Event Details] window >> [F] >> **Icon Display** >> [■] >> Select an icon >> [■]

#### Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule] window >> [F] >> **No. of Schedules** >> [■]

#### Edit an Event

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window (>> Select an event) >> [F] >> **Edit** >> [■] >> Edit each item >> [✉]



### Copy an Event

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window >> [F] >> **Copy** >>

[■] >> Edit each item >> [✉]

[🔊] Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

### Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event

- To Make Secret Setting

[Event Edit] window >> Enter each item >> [✉]

- To Cancel Secret Setting

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window >> [F] >> **Release Secret** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

[🔊] Before making/canceling secret setting, set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-9).

### Delete All Events

[Schedule] window, [Event List] window or [Event Details] window >> [F] >> **Delete** >> [■] >>

**Delete All** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> Select an item >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

### Reset Holidays

[Schedule] window >> [F] >> **Reset Holiday** >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]

## To Do List

### Start Here

[Task List] window ..... P. 11-10

[Task Details] window ..... P. 11-10

### Sort Tasks by Category

[Task List] window >> [F] >> **Category Display** >> [■] >> Select a category >> [■]

### Change Order of Tasks

[Task List] window >> [F] >> **Sort/Filter** >> [■] >> Select a criterion >> [■]

### Set Task Status

[Task List] window/ [Task Details] window (>> Select a task) >> [F] >> **Change Status** >> [■] >> Select a status >> [■]

[🔊] The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List window and in Task Details window.

[🔊] When **Completion** is set as status, enter the completion date.

### Delete All Tasks

[Task List] window >> [F] >> **Delete** >> [■] >> **Delete All** >> [■] >> Enter Security Code >> [■] >> **YES** >> [■]



## Text Memo

### Start Here

[Text Memo List] window..... P. 11-11

#### Save a Text Memo to Schedule

[Text Memo List] window >> Select a text memo >> >> **Edit**

**Schedule** >> >> Enter each item >>

Event Edit window opens with the text memo details set as event content.

#### Sort Text Memos by Category

[Text Memo List] window >> Select a text memo >> >> **Category** >> >> Select a category >>

#### Check Text Memo Information

[Text Memo List] window >> Select a text memo >> >> **Text Memo Info** >>

#### Delete All Text Memos

[Text Memo List] window >> >> **Delete** >> >> **Delete All** >> >> Enter Security Code >> >> **YES** >>

## Alarm

### Start Here

[Alarm List] ..... P. 11-14

[Alarm Details] window ..... P. 11-14

#### Cancel All Alarms

[Alarm List] / [Alarm Details] window >> >> **Release All** >> >> **YES** >>

#### Edit Alarm Settings

[Alarm List] / [Alarm Details] window ( >> Select an alarm) >> >> Edit each item >>

## Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

### Start Here

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] window ..... P. 11-17

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window ..... P. 11-17

[Text Scanning] window ..... P. 11-19

[Scanned Text List] window ..... P. 11-20

[Scanned Text Details] window ..... P. 11-20

### Scanning Text

#### Correct Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window >> Scan text >> to move cursor to the character you want to correct >> Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list Press to toggle between upper case and lower case.



## Edit Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window >> Scan text >> >> **Edit** >> >> Edit text using keypad

To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press , select **Select Recog. Data** and then press .

## Set Printing Status of Text

[Text Scanning] window >> >> **NEGA/POSI Mode** >> >> **Auto setting, Positive Fix** or **Negative Fix** >>

Set to **Positive Fix** when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.

Set to **Negative Fix** when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

## Set Guidance OFF/ON

[Text Scanning] window >> >> **Guidance OFF** or **Guidance ON** >>

## Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Text Scanning] window >> >> **Vertical Writing** or **Lateral Writing** >>

## Using Scanned Data

### Make a Call

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window >> Select a phone number >> >> **Dialing** >> >> **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** >> >> **Dial** >> >> Talk >> to end call

### Compose a Message

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window >> Select an e-mail address >> >> **Create S! Mail** >> >> Compose and send S! Mail

## Access the Internet

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window >> Select a URL >> >> **Internet** >> >> **YES** >>

## Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window >> Select an item >> >> **Add to Phone Book** >>

- To select **Phone** >> **Phone** >> >> **New** or **Add** >> (>> Search Phone Book >> Select an entry >> (twice)) >> Edit each item >> (>> **YES** >>
- To select **USIM** >> **USIM** >> >> **New** or **Overwrite** >> (>> Search Phone Book >> Select an entry >> (twice)) >> Edit each item >> (>> **Overwrite\*** or **Add** >>

\* To select **Overwrite**, press , select **YES**, then press .



### Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window >> Select a URL >>  >> **Add Bookmark** >>  (twice) >> Select a folder >> 

### Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] window >> Select an item >>  >> **Search Phone Book** >>  >> Search Phone Book

### Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] window >> Select an item >>  >> **Add to Memo** >> 

### Copy Text

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window >>  >> **Copy** >>  >> Select beginning of characters >>  >> Select end of characters >> 

### Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] window >> Select an entry >>  >> **Edit Title** >>  >> Edit title >> 

### Delete Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] window/ [Scanned Text List] window >> Select an entry >> 

- To select *Delete This* >> *Delete This* >>  >> **YES** >> 
- To select *Delete All* >> *Delete All* >>  >> Enter Security Code >>  >> **YES** >> 





# Data Management

<b>About Data Folder</b> .....	<b>12-2</b>	<b>Managing Memory Cards</b> .....	<b>12-12</b>
<b>Accessing Files</b> .....	<b>12-3</b>	Formatting a Memory Card .....	12-12
Opening Files.....	12-3	Accessing Memory Card Data .....	12-12
Creating Animations.....	12-4	Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card .....	12-13
Using Playlist (Melodies).....	12-4	Configuring Print Settings of Images .....	12-14
Using Playlists (Videos) .....	12-5	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>12-15</b>
<b>Editing Files</b> .....	<b>12-7</b>	Accessing Files.....	12-15
Editing Still Images .....	12-7	Editing Files.....	12-16
Editing Videos .....	12-8	Managing Folders.....	12-17
<b>File &amp; Folder Management</b> .....	<b>12-9</b>	Managing Files.....	12-17
Creating a Folder .....	12-9	Memory Card .....	12-18
Moving Files to a Different Folder .....	12-9		
<b>About Memory Card</b> .....	<b>12-10</b>		
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card.....	12-10		

12



## About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. New data created by handset functions or obtained via the Internet or mail are saved to different folders according to the file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

### Folders & Files in Data Folder

#### My Picture

Image files such as those taken by camera and downloaded My Pictograms

#### Melody

Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

#### S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

#### Ring Songs · Music

Chaku-Uta<sup>®</sup>, Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup> and downloaded music files

#### Videos

Video files such as those recorded by camera/Downloaded video files

#### Books

Downloaded book files

#### TV

Recorded programs<sup>1</sup> and still images captured from programs<sup>2</sup>

- 1 Can be saved on memory card only.
- 2 Can be saved on handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

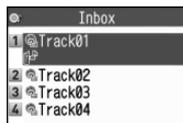
YES >>  >> Select a folder >>  >> Select a data item >>  >>  >> YES >>

- You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
- You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.



## Opening Files

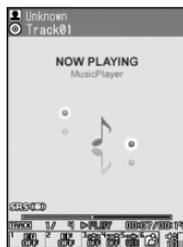
- 1 **Data Folder**
- 2 Select a folder and a sub folder



File List Window

- To Open a File on Memory Card **microSD**

- 3 Select a file



Opened File Window

## Functions in My Picture Window

Selecting a file in My Picture folder opens a window such as below.



My Picture Window

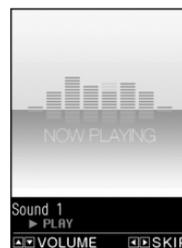
The following operations are possible in My Picture window.

Switch Files	
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	or
Show at Actual Size*	
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	

\* Press to return to the original size.

## Functions in Melody Window

Selecting a file in Melody folder opens a window such as below.



Melody Window

The following operations are possible in Melody window.

Switch Files	
Adjust Volume	
Stop	
End	



### Tip

- Selecting a file in S! Appli folder activates S! Appli. For details on S! Appli, see P. 9-8.
- Selecting a file in Ring Songs · Music folder or Videos folder activates Music Player. For details on Music Player, see P. 9-3.

## Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

- 1 **Data Folder** **My Picture** **Original Animation**



Original Animation List Window

- 2 **<New>**
- 3 **Select a frame** **Select a folder** **Select a still image**

Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.

**To Cancel an Assigned Image**  
**Select a frame** **Release This**

### 4

### Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.

### Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List window and press to play the animation.

## Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

- 1 **Data Folder** **Melody** **Playlist** **Edit Playlist**
- To Clear Playlist**  
**Release Playlist** **YES**



- 2** Select a number **»»**  **»»**  
 Select a folder **»»**  **»»**  
 Select a melody **»»** 

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

- **To Cancel an Assigned Melody**  
**»»** Select a number **»»**  **»»**  
*Release This* **»»** 

### 3

#### Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press  to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

## Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

- 1**  **»»** *Data Folder* **»»**  **»»**  
*Videos* **»»**  **»»** *Playlist* **»»** 



Playlist List Window

- 2** Select a playlist **»»**  **»»** *Edit Playlist* **»»** 

- 3** Select a number **»»**  **»»**  
 Select a folder **»»**  **»»**  
 Select a video **»»** 

Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

- **To Cancel an Assigned Video**  
**»»** Select a number **»»**  **»»**  
*Release This* **»»**  **»»** *YES* **»»** 

### 4

#### Tip

- Select a playlist in Playlist List window and press  to play the playlist.



### More Features

#### Advanced

##### Opening Files

- ❖ Check File Information
- ❖ Change Order of Files
- ❖ Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- ❖ Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- ❖ Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(👉 P. 12-15)

##### Viewing Images

- ❖ Play Animation from the Beginning
- ❖ Compose Four Images to Make One
- ❖ Set Display Size of an Image
- ❖ Edit Title of an Original Animation
- ❖ Cancel an Original Animation

(👉 P. 12-15)

##### Playing Melodies

- ❖ Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(👉 P. 12-16)

##### Playing Videos

- ❖ Switch Display Format of File List Window
- ❖ Clear a Playlist

(👉 P. 12-16)

### Customize

#### Display Settings

- ❖ Set Image List View

(👉 P. 14-4)



## Editing Still Images

### Basic Flow of Operations

- 1 **Data Folder** **My Picture** Select a folder Select an image



My Picture Window

- 2 **Edit Image** Select an editing option Edit image
- 3 to end editing

- 4 **YES or NO**

Selecting **YES** overwrites the original image. Selecting **NO** saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder.

### Note

- Only images with can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.

### Adding a Frame

- 1 [My Picture] window **Edit Image** **Frame**

- 2 Select a frame

■ To Change Frame



■ To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees



■ To Cancel Frame



- 3

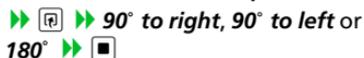
- 4 **YES or NO**

### Adding Stamps

- 1 [My Picture] window **Edit Image** **Marker Stamp**

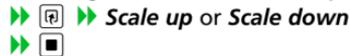
- 2 Select a marker stamp

■ To Rotate Marker Stamp



**90° to right, 90° to left or 180°**

■ To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp



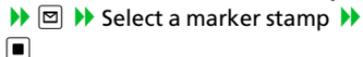
**Scale up or Scale down**

■ To Cancel Marker Stamp



- 3 to select a position

■ To Paste Another Marker Stamp



Select a marker stamp

- 4

- 5 **YES or NO**



## Pasting a Text Stamp

- 1 [My Picture] window >> >> **Edit Image** >> >> **Character Stamp** >>
- 2 Enter text >>
  - To Edit Text
    - >> >> **Character input** >> >> Enter text >>
  - To Change Text Color
    - >> >> **Character Color** >> >> Select a color >>
      - Press to toggle color palettes.
  - To Change Font Type
    - >> >> **Font Type** >> >> **Gothic** or **Ming-Cho** >>
  - To Change Font Size
    - >> >> **Font Size** >> >> Select a font size >>
- 3 to select a position >>
- 4
- 5 >> **YES** or **NO** >>

## Cropping an Image

- 1 [My Picture] window >> >> **Edit Image** >> >> **Trim away** >>
- 2 Select a size >> >> to position cropping area >>
- 3
- 4 >> **YES** or **NO** >>

## Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

- 1 >> **Data Folder** >> >> **Videos** >> >> Select a folder >> >> Select a video >> >> **Edit Video** >>
- 2 >> **Trim Videos** >> >> **Any Size** or **295KB** >>
- 3 

The video playback and clipping start at the same time.

### ■ To Start from a Halfway Point

- >> >> At a desired point >>
- >>

### 4 to stop >>

Selected portion plays.

When **295KB** is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 295 KB.

### 5 (twice) >> **YES** >>

### Note

- Only QCIF (176 × 144) or smaller videos with can be clipped.
- Editing may cause deterioration of image quality.

## More Features

### Advanced

Editing Files

- ❖ Retouch an Image
- ❖ Adjust Image Brightness
- ❖ Rotate an Image
- ❖ Change Image Size
- ❖ Correct Backlight
- ❖ Refresh Skin Tone

P. 12-16



## Creating a Folder

- 1  **Data Folder**
- Select a folder type

<Example> When My Picture is Selected



Folder List Window

- 2  **Add Folder**
- Enter folder name

### Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

## Moving Files to a Different Folder

- 1 [File List] window  Select a file  **Move**

- 2 **Move this**   Select a destination folder
- YES**

### ■ To Move Multiple Files

- ▶ **Move selected**   Select a destination folder
- Select a file  Repeat the same step to specify other files
- YES**

### ■ To Move All Files in a Folder

- ▶ **Move all**   Select a destination folder
- YES**
- 

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Managing Folders

- ❖ Edit a Folder Name
- ❖ Delete a Folder
- ❖ Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Videos Folder

(👉 P. 12-17)

#### Managing Files

- ❖ Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window
- ❖ Check Volume of Saved Files
- ❖ Edit a File Name
- ❖ Delete Files

(👉 P. 12-17)



## About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

- Handset supports microSD™ and microSDHC™ memory cards of up to 8 GB (as of February 2009).
- Be sure handset power is off when inserting/removing memory cards.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Use only memory cards recommended by SoftBank. Other memory cards may not work properly and cannot be used on handset.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading

data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.

- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

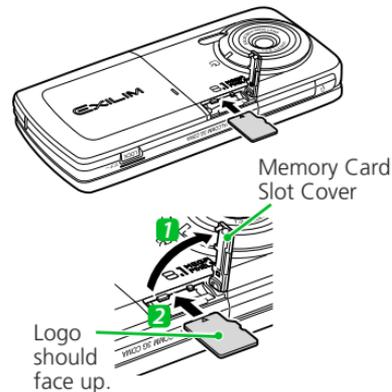
## Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

### Insertion

#### 1 Open Slot cover

#### 2 Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks

Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



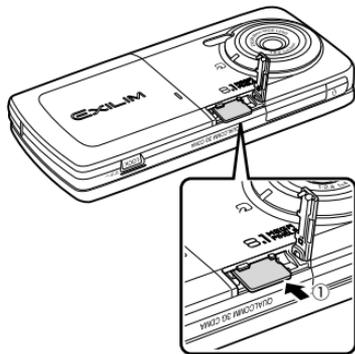
### Tip

- If  appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.



### Removal

- 1 Press and release**  
Gently pull out memory card.



#### Note

- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.



## Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 **Tools** **microSD Manager**

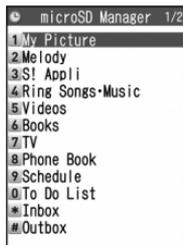
2 **microSD format**   
**Enter Security Code**   
**YES**

### Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

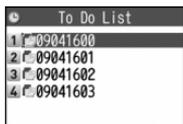
## Accessing Memory Card Data

1 **Tools** **microSD Manager**



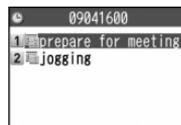
microSD Manager Window

2 **Select a category**



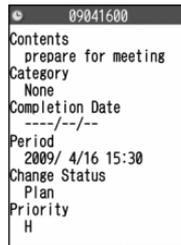
File List Window

3 **Select a file**



Data List Window

4 **Select a data item**



Data Details Window



## Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs

## Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

**1** [Data List] window   
 Copy to microSD

## 2 Copy this

### ■ To Copy Multiple Data

▶▶ *Copy selected* ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other data   
 ▶▶ YES

### ■ To Copy All Data

▶▶ *Copy all* ▶▶ Enter Security Code ▶▶ YES

## Tip

- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in Data Folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.

## Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

### ○ To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

**1** ▶▶ *Data Folder* ▶▶ Select a folder type ▶▶ *microSD* ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ *Copy to Phone*

## 2 Copy this

### ■ To Copy Multiple Data

▶▶ *Copy selected* ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other data   
 ▶▶ YES

### ■ To Copy All Data

▶▶ *Copy all* ▶▶ Enter Security Code ▶▶ YES



## ⦿ To Copy PIM Data to Handset

<Example> Copy Data in Overwrite Mode

- 1 **Tools** **microSD Manager** **Select a PIM data type** **Select a data item** **Copy/OW to Phone**

### 2 Copy This

- To Copy Multiple Files
  - ▶ **Copy selected** Select a file Repeat the same step to specify other files

- To Copy All Files
  - ▶ **Copy All**

### 3 Enter Security Code **YES** **YES**

#### Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

## Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

- 1 **Data Folder** **My Picture** **microSD** **DCIM**

- 2 **Select a folder** **Select a still image** **DPOF setting**

### 3 DPOF set One

- To Specify Multiple Images
  - ▶ **DPOF set Choice** Select a still image Repeat the same step to specify other images

- 4 **Print** **Print Sheets** **Enter number of prints**

- 5 **a Date** **ON or OFF**

- 6

## More Features

### Advanced

Memory Card

- ❖ Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- ❖ Check & Repair Memory Card
- ❖ Delete Data on Memory Card
- ❖ Cancel Print Settings of Images

( P. 12-18)



## Accessing Files

### Start Here

- [File List] window ..... P. 12-3
- [Opened File] window ..... P. 12-3
- [My Picture] window ..... P. 12-3
- [Melody] window ..... P. 12-3
- [Original Animation List] window  
..... P. 12-4
- [Playlist List] window ..... P. 12-5

### Opening Files

#### Check File Information

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (▶▶ Select a file) ▶▶ ▶▶ **Image Info, Video Info, Melody Info or Memory Info** ▶▶

#### Change Order of Files

[File List] window ▶▶ ▶▶ **Sort** ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶

#### Set an Image to Appear in Standby

[File List] window/ [My Picture] window (▶▶ Select a file) ▶▶ ▶▶ **Set as Display** ▶▶ ▶▶ **Stand-by Display** ▶▶ (▶▶ Select a layout) ▶▶ ▶▶ Confirm preview ▶▶

Set images to appear when making calls or sending messages.

#### Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] window ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ ▶▶ **Stand-by Display** ▶▶ ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

#### Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (▶▶ Select a file) ▶▶ ▶▶ **Ring Tone** ▶▶ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶

Only a melody can be set as a ringtone from Opened File window.

## Viewing Images

#### Play Animation from the Beginning

[My Picture] window ▶▶ ▶▶ **Retry** ▶▶

#### Compose Four Images to Make One

[File List] window ▶▶ ▶▶ **Composite Image** ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ ▶▶ Repeat the same step to assign three other images to their respective positions ▶▶ ▶▶

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating composite images.
- Copyright-protected images are unavailable.
- Images saved on memory card cannot be used.



## Set Display Size of an Image

[My Picture] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Set Image Disp.* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Normal* or *Fit in Display* **▶▶** 

## Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] window  
**▶▶** Select an animation **▶▶**  **▶▶**  
*Edit Title* **▶▶**  **▶▶** Edit title **▶▶** 

## Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] window  
**▶▶** Select an animation **▶▶**  **▶▶**  
*Release Animation* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *YES*  
**▶▶** 

## Playing Melodies

### Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Set Repeat Play* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *ON* **▶▶** 

## Playing Videos

### Switch Display Format of File List Window

[File List] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *List Setting* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Title* or *Title+Image* **▶▶** 

### Clear a Playlist

[Playlist List] window **▶▶** Select a playlist **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Release Playlist* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *YES* **▶▶** 

## Editing Files

### Start Here

[My Picture] window ..... P. 12-7

### Retouch an Image

[My Picture] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Edit Image* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Retouch* **▶▶**  **▶▶**  
 Select an effect **▶▶**  (three times)  
**▶▶** *YES* or *NO* **▶▶** 

### Adjust Image Brightness

[My Picture] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Edit Image* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Brightness* **▶▶**   
**▶▶**  to adjust brightness **▶▶**   
 (twice) **▶▶** *YES* or *NO* **▶▶** 

### Rotate an Image

[My Picture] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Edit Image* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Rotate* **▶▶**  **▶▶**  
*90° to right, 90° to left* or *180°* **▶▶**  
 (three times) **▶▶** *YES* or *NO* **▶▶** 

### Change Image Size

[My Picture] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Edit Image* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Change Size* **▶▶**   
**▶▶** Select a size **▶▶**  (three times)  
**▶▶** *YES* or *NO* **▶▶** 

### Correct Backlight

[My Picture] window **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Edit Image* **▶▶**  **▶▶** *Correct Backlight*  
**▶▶**  (three times) **▶▶** *YES* or *NO*  
**▶▶** 



## Refresh Skin Tone

[My Picture] window >>  >> **Edit Image** >>  >> **Refresh Skin Tone** >>  (three times) >> **YES** or **NO** >> 

## Managing Folders

### Start Here

[Folder List] window ..... P. 12-9

#### Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] window >> Select a folder >>  >> **Edit Folder Name** >>  >> Edit folder name >> 

 Only names of user-created folders can be edited.

#### Delete a Folder

[Folder List] window >> Select a folder >>  >> **Delete Folder** >>  >> Enter Security Code >>  (Select delete method >>  ) >> **YES** >> 

 Only user-created folders can be deleted.

 Files in the selected folder are also deleted.

 When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

#### Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Videos Folder

[Folder List] window >>  >> **Delete all Image** or **Delete All** >>  >> Enter Security Code >>  >> **YES** >> 

 When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

## Managing Files

### Start Here

[File List] window ..... P. 12-3

#### Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window

[File List] window >> Select an image file >>  >> **Edit Title** >>  >> Edit title >> 

 Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

#### Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] window >>  >> **Memory Info** >> 

#### Edit a File Name

[File List] window >> Select a file >>  >> **Edit File Name** >>  >> Edit file name >> 

 Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.



## Delete Files

[File List] window **▶▶** Select a file **▶▶** **▶▶ Delete** **▶▶**

- To select *Delete This*  
**▶▶ Delete This** **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**
- To select *Delete Selected*  
**▶▶ Delete Selected** **▶▶** **▶▶** Select a file **▶▶** **▶▶** Repeat the same step to specify other files **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**
- To select *Delete All*  
**▶▶ Delete All** **▶▶** **▶▶** Enter Security Code **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**

## Memory Card

### Start Here

- [microSD Manager] window ..... P. 12-12
- [File List] window ..... P. 12-12
- [Data List] window ..... P. 12-12
- [Data Details] window ..... P. 12-12

### Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window, [File List] window, [Data List] window or [Data Details] window **▶▶** **▶▶ microSD Info** **▶▶**

### Check & Repair Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window **▶▶** **▶▶ Check microSD** **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**

- To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press or .
- Some memory cards may not be repairable.

## Delete Data on Memory Card

[File List] window **▶▶** Select a data item **▶▶** **▶▶ Delete** **▶▶**

- To select *Delete this*  
**▶▶ Delete this** **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**
- To select *Delete selected*  
**▶▶ Delete selected** **▶▶** **▶▶** Select data **▶▶** **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**
- To select *Delete all*  
**▶▶ Delete all** **▶▶** **▶▶** Enter Security Code **▶▶** **▶▶ YES** **▶▶**

## Cancel Print Settings of Images

**▶▶ Data Folder** **▶▶** **▶▶ My Picture** **▶▶** **▶▶ microSD** **▶▶** **▶▶ DCIM** **▶▶** **▶▶** Select a folder **▶▶** **▶▶** Select a still image **▶▶** **▶▶ DPOF setting** **▶▶** **▶▶ DPOF set One or DPOF set Choice** **▶▶** **(▶▶** Select an image **▶▶** **▶▶** Repeat the same step to specify other images **▶▶** **▶▶ Print OFF** or **All Print OFF** **▶▶**



# Connectivity

<b>Infrared .....</b>	<b>13-2</b>
Getting Started .....	13-2
Transferring Data via Infrared .....	13-3
<b>PC Connection.....</b>	<b>13-5</b>
USB Driver.....	13-5
Data Transfer.....	13-5
Setting USB Mode.....	13-5
Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC.....	13-5
Using Handset as Modem.....	13-6



## Getting Started

Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices.

The following data can be transferred via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Books
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser)

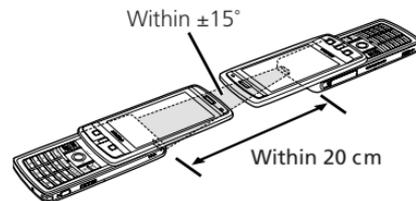
### Note

- Handset cannot send all still images, melodies, videos, My Pictograms, songs or books at one time.

## Precautions

- Data may not be sent depending on the status of the receiving device. Folder settings of received messages or bookmarks, etc., or contents of Graphic Mails may be lost or incorrectly transferred depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.
- All the still images on handset are overwritten, even those set as Phone Book entry images, if handset receives all still images at once.

- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.



## Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

## Transferring Data via Infrared

### Sending One File

Send one file at a time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window, select a file or open a data details window** >> >> **Send Ir Data** >>

■ **To Send a JPEG Image**

In a data list window >>   
This enables faster transmission.

- 2 YES** >>

Transfer starts.

When the file is sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■ **To Cancel Transfer**

>>

### Tip

- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

### Receiving One File

- 1** >> **Tools** >> >> **Receive Ir Data** >> >> **Receive** >>

Transfer starts.

■ **To Cancel Transfer**

>>

- 2 When file is received** >> **YES** >>

File is saved to handset.

File is discarded if no operation is done in about 30 seconds of transfer.

### Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window/data details window** >> >> **Send All Ir Data** >>
  - 2 Enter Security Code** >> >> Enter authentication password
  - 3 YES** >>   
Transfer starts.  
When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.
- **To Cancel Transfer**  
>>



## Receiving All Files

- 1** **Tools** **Receive Ir Data** **Receive All**
- 2** **Enter Security Code** **Enter authentication password**
- 3** **YES**   
Files start being received when the sending device begins sending.
- 4** **When an overwrite confirmation appears** **YES**   
Transfer starts.  
When files are saved to handset, a saving completed message appears.  
**To Cancel Transfer**

### Note

- When handset receives all files, the corresponding files on handset are overwritten. For example, when handset receives all messages, all the messages on handset including protected ones are overwritten; and when it receives all Phone Book data or Schedule data, all the Phone Book entries or events, including those set as secret, are overwritten.
- Receiving of data ends automatically if data reaches the maximum storable capacity.

### More Features

#### Customize

#### Phone Book

- ❖ Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

P. 14-16



Connect handset to a PC with a USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately as an optional accessory.

Function	Description
Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 13-5).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 13-5).

\* USB driver must be installed in advance.

This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

For more details, visit “GPL・LGPL等について” at <http://ch-mobile.jp/product/gpl/>

### USB Driver

This software is required for your handset to connect with a PC. First install on your PC referring to the web site below for installation details.

<http://k-tai.casio.jp/>

### Data Transfer

Use SoftBank Utility Software to connect with a PC via USB cable and use various kinds of data on a PC. See the following web site for software details.

<http://k-tai.casio.jp/>

- USB Driver must be installed before using SoftBank Utility Software.
- Synchronization unavailable for Phone Book, Schedule, and To Do List.

### Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable. To use a data transfer tool, or use handset as a modem for packet transmission, set USB mode to **Communication Mode**.

To access memory card data from a PC in the same manner as USB memory, set it to **microSD Mode**.

1 **Settings** **External Connection** **USB Mode Setting**

2 **Communication Mode or microSD Mode**

### Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set **USB Mode Setting** to **microSD Mode** in advance.



### 1 Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

### 2 When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.

#### Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

## Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).



# Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds.....	14-2
Phone Book & Calls .....	14-16
Mail.....	14-22
Internet .....	14-26
TV.....	14-28
Camera .....	14-31
Player & S! Appli.....	14-35
Entertainment.....	14-37
Other Settings .....	14-39



## Clock

Start Here **Settings** **Clock**

Hide Clock	<b>Clock Display</b> <b>Display</b> <b>ON or OFF</b>
Clock Size	<b>Clock Display</b> <b>Size</b> Select a size
Clock Color	<b>Clock Display</b> <b>Color</b> <b>Black or White</b>
Set Auto Time Adjustment	<b>Set Main Time</b> <b>Auto Time Adjust</b> <b>Auto</b> Select a time zone • Press  to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field.
Manually Adjust Time	<b>Set Main Time</b> <b>Auto Time Adjust</b> <b>Manual(Date Time Set)</b> Select a time zone    Enter date and time • Press  to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field.
Summer Time	<b>Set Main Time</b> <b>Summer Time</b> <b>ON</b>
Time Zone (Sub Clock)	<b>Set Sub Clock</b> <b>Display Method</b> <b>Always</b> <b>YES</b> Select a time zone • Press  to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field.
Hide Sub Clock	<b>Set Sub Clock</b> <b>Display Method</b> <b>OFF</b>
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	<b>Set Sub Clock</b> <b>Summer Time</b> <b>ON</b>
Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)	<b>Set Sub Clock</b> <b>Area Name</b> <b>Display</b>



## Alarm

Start Here  **» Settings**  **» Clock**

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	<b>» Alarm Setting</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Operation Preferred or Alarm Preferred</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
Change Alarm Tone	<b>» Clock Alarm Tone Set</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Select an item</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Set an alarm tone</b>

## Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Clock</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Auto Power ON or Auto Power OFF</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» ON</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Enter time</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» 1 Time or Daily</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
-----------------------	--

## Kisekae Theme

Start Here  **» Settings**  **» Kisekae Theme**

Set Display Design Collectively	<b>» Select a style</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» YES</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
Check Kisekae Theme Details	<b>» Select a style</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Details of some items can be checked/played by selecting an item and pressing <input type="checkbox"/>.</li> </ul>
Edit Title of a Style	<b>» Select a style</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Edit Title</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Edit title</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>



Save Current Kisekai Theme as Favorite	<p>▶▶ お気に入り (Favorites) ▶▶ [Envelope Icon] ▶▶ [Reset Icon] ▶▶ <b>Take Setting Info</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>YES</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current kisekai theme can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed.</li> </ul>
Change Each Item for Favorites	▶▶ お気に入り (Favorites) ▶▶ [Envelope Icon] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ Set an image
Clear All Favorite Settings	▶▶ お気に入り (Favorites) ▶▶ [Reset Icon] ▶▶ <b>Reset Setting Info</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>YES</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon]

## Display Settings

Start Here [Square Icon] ▶▶ **Settings** ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ **Display** ▶▶ [Square Icon]

Wallpaper	▶▶ <b>Display Setting</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>Stand-by Display</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>My Picture or Videos</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ Set an image/video (▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [Square Icon] (twice))
Show Calendar in Standby	▶▶ <b>Display Setting</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>Stand-by Display</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>Calendar</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>Background</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ Set an image ▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [Square Icon] (twice) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>No Background</b> if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar.</li> <li>Press [Square Icon], use [Square Icon] to select the calendar and press [Square Icon] to operate it. Use [Square Icon] to switch to the previous/next month. Press [Square Icon] to activate Schedule.</li> </ul>
Set Random Display of Images in Standby	▶▶ <b>Display Setting</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>Stand-by Display</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ <b>Random Display</b> ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [Square Icon] ▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [Square Icon] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Images switch at random each time handset is opened or returns to Standby.</li> </ul>



Set a Wake-up Image	<p>» <i>Display Setting</i> » ■ » <i>Wake-up Display</i> » ■ » <i>My Picture</i> » ■          » Set an image</p>
Set a Wake-up Message	<p>» <i>Display Setting</i> » ■ » <i>Wake-up Display</i> » ■ » <i>Message</i> » ■ »          Enter message » ■</p>
Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	<p>» <i>Display Setting</i> » ■ » <i>Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail Sending</i> »          ■ » Set an image</p>
Set an Incoming Call Image/Video	<p>» <i>Display Setting</i> » ■ » <i>Calling or Video Call Calling</i> » ■ » <i>Select Calling Disp.</i> » ■ » <i>My Picture or Videos</i> » ■ » Set an image/video</p>
Set an Incoming Message Image	<p>» <i>Display Setting</i> » ■ » <i>Mail Receiving</i> » ■ » <i>Select Receiving Disp.</i> » ■ » Set an image/video</p>
Set an Image for New Messages or Received Result Window	<p>» <i>Display Setting</i> » ■ » <i>Retrieve New or Mail Rec'd Result</i> » ■ »          Set an image</p>
Display Color Scheme	<p>» <i>Display Design</i> » ■ » <i>Color Pattern</i> » ■ » Select a color » ■</p>
Set a Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Pattern	<p>» <i>Display Design</i> » ■ » <i>Icon Pattern</i> » ■ » <i>Battery Icon or Antenna Icon</i> » ■ » Select a pattern » ■</p>
Change Softkey Color	<p>» <i>Display Design</i> » ■ » <i>Soft Key</i> » ■ » Select a color » ■</p>
Set Font Type	<p>» <i>Font</i> » ■ » <i>Font Type</i> » ■ » <i>Gothic or Ming-cho</i> » ■          • Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</p>
Set Font Thickness	<p>» <i>Font</i> » ■ » <i>Thickness</i> » ■ » <i>Thin or Bold</i> » ■          • Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</p>



<b>Set Font Sizes Collectively</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>Font</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Character Size</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Standard or X-large</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Items settable with Separate Setting for Character Size can be set collectively.</li> <li>• Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</li> </ul>
<b>Set Font Size for Each Function Window</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>Font</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Character Size</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Separate Setting</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ Select a window ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ Select a size ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</li> <li>• In PC Site Browser, this procedure is available in Small Screen view.</li> </ul>
<b>Interface Language</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>言語選択</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>日本語 or English</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To change interface language from Japanese to English: ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>設定</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>ディスプレイ</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Language</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>English</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></li> </ul>
<b>Set Image List View</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>Viewer Settings</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Picture or Title</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<b>Guard from Prying Eyes</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>Screen Filter</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>ON</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alternatively, press and hold [8] in Standby to toggle Screen Filter on and off.</li> <li>• Display has a white hue and a narrower viewing angle when on.</li> <li>• Screen Filter is off when handset is turned back on.</li> </ul>
<b>Display Quality</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>Image Display Mode</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Normal, Vivid or Dynamic</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Normal</b> is standard quality, <b>Vivid</b> is brighter quality, and <b>Dynamic</b> is high-contrast quality.</li> <li>• The <b>Visual Image Effect</b> setting in <b>TV Effect</b> has preference for TV display quality.</li> <li>• A preview image for each mode appears during selection in Image Display Mode to check the effect.</li> </ul>
<b>Show Information of Messages Received When Watching TV</b>	<p>▶▶ <b>Mail Rec'd Setting</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Display Sender or Display Sender/Subject</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p>



## Backlight

Start Here  >> **Settings** >>  >> **Display** >>  >> **Backlight** >>

Set Backlight & Power Saving	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>Lighting</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> ( &gt;&gt; Select time Backlight is lit &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> ) &gt;&gt; <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> ( &gt;&gt; Enter a time before the Power Saver Mode is activated)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Power Saver Mode is activated, nothing appears in Standby and Keypad backlight flashes. Pressing any key cancels the Power Saver Mode.</li> </ul>
Set Backlight during Charging	>> <b>Charging</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Standard</b> or <b>All Time ON</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Whether to Light Keypad Backlight	>> <b>Area</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>LCD+Keys</b> or <b>LCD</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Brightness of Backlight	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>Brightness</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>Select a Level</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set <b>Brightness</b> to <b>Level 6</b> to use Display with the maximum brightness. Backlight is <b>Level 4</b> by default. A higher setting reduces battery life.</li> </ul>

## Shortcuts

Start Here  >> **Settings** >>  >> **Display** >>

Set Shortcut Theme	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>Shortcut</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; Select a theme &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>YES</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to see details of the selected theme.</li> </ul>
--------------------	---



<b>Change Icon Design of a Theme</b>	>> <b>Shortcut</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select an icon >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>CHG Icon Image</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Select Icon Image</b> or <b>Default Icon Image</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> (>> Set an icon)
<b>Change Order of Icons of a Theme</b>	>> <b>Shortcut</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select an icon >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Sort</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a position >> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Copy Icons to Another Theme</b>	>> <b>Shortcut</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select an icon >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Copy</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Copy This, Copy Selected</b> or <b>Copy All</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a destination theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> (>> Select icons >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <input type="checkbox"/> ) • When <i>Copy Selected</i> or <i>Copy All</i> is selected, select <b>YES</b> and press <input type="checkbox"/> at the end of the procedure.
<b>Move Icons to Another Theme</b>	>> <b>Shortcut</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select an icon >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Move</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Move This, Move Selected</b> or <b>Move All</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a destination theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> (>> Select icons >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <input type="checkbox"/> ) >> <b>YES</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Delete Icons of a Theme</b>	>> <b>Shortcut</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a theme >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select an icon >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Delete</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To select <i>Delete This</i>                      &gt;&gt; <b>Delete This</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>YES</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/></li> <li>• To select <i>Delete selected</i>                      &gt;&gt; <b>Delete selected</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; Select icons &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>YES</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/></li> <li>• To select <i>Delete All</i>                      &gt;&gt; <b>Delete All</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/> &gt;&gt; <b>YES</b> &gt;&gt; <input type="checkbox"/></li> </ul>
<b>Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation</b>	>> <b>3D Display Setting</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>ON</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>



## Menu Display Settings

Start Here » **Settings** » » **Display** » » **Menu Display Set** »

List View and Details View	<p>» <b>Menu Display</b> »  » <b>List or Detail</b> » </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select View for menus from  » <b>Settings</b> » </li> </ul>
Set Main Menu Theme	<p>» <b>Theme</b> »  » Select a theme » </p>
Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	<p>» <b>Theme</b> »  » <b>Original Theme</b> »  » Select a menu item »  »</p> <p>Set an image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image.</li> </ul>
Change Background (Original Theme)	<p>» <b>Theme</b> »  » <b>Original Theme</b> »  » <b>Background Image</b> »  »</p> <p>Set an image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change Main Menu background to any preferred image.</li> </ul>
Reset Original Theme Settings	<p>» <b>Theme</b> »  » <b>Original Theme</b> »  » Select a menu item »  »</p> <p><b>Reset or All reset</b> »  » <b>YES</b> » </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This procedure is only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.</li> </ul>
Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory	<p>» <b>Memory Focus</b> »  » <b>ON</b> » </p>



Start Here

Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	<i>&lt;Not Recorded&gt;</i> to select a function   ( <b>YES</b> )
Change Order of Original Menu Items	Select an item <b>Sort</b> Select a position
Cancel Original Menu Items	Select an item <b>Release</b> or <b>Release All</b> <b>YES</b>
Reset Original Menu	<b>Reset Org. Menu</b> <b>YES</b>

## Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector	<b>Settings</b> <b>Display</b> <b>Icons Setting</b> <b>ON</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing  in Standby. Use  to select an indicators and press  to access the corresponding function.</li> </ul>
---------------------------	---

## Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here **Settings** **Incoming Call**

Adjust Ringtone Volume	<b>Ring Volume</b> <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> to adjust volume <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Step</b> is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When <b>Silent</b> is set, no ringtone sounds.</li> </ul>
------------------------	---



Set a Ringtone	<p>» Select Ring Tone » <input type="checkbox"/> » Phone, Video Call or Mail » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select Ring Tone » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select an item » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select a folder » <input type="checkbox"/> » Set a ringtone</p>
Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones	<p>» Select Ring Tone » <input type="checkbox"/> » Phone, Video Call or Mail » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select Ring Tone » <input type="checkbox"/> » Random Melody » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select a folder » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.</li> </ul>
Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone	<p>» Mail Ring Time » <input type="checkbox"/> » Mail » <input type="checkbox"/> » ON » <input type="checkbox"/> » Enter ringing duration</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <i>OFF</i> is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.</li> </ul>
Set Vibration*	<p>» Vibrator » <input type="checkbox"/> » Phone, Video Call or Mail » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select a pattern » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, handset vibrates to the melody set as ringtone.</li> </ul>
Set Illumination Color	<p>» Illumination » <input type="checkbox"/> » Set Color » <input type="checkbox"/> » Phone, Video Call or Mail » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select a color » <input type="checkbox"/></p>
Set Illumination Pattern	<p>» Illumination » <input type="checkbox"/> » Set Pattern » <input type="checkbox"/> » Standard or Melody Linkage » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even when <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, Illumination may not flash to the melody depending on the set ringtone.</li> </ul>
Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	<p>» Illumination » <input type="checkbox"/> » Missed Info » <input type="checkbox"/> » ON » <input type="checkbox"/></p>

\* When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.



Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	<p>▶▶ <b>Select Ring Tone</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Select Calling Disp. or Select Receiving Disp.</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> (▶▶ <b>My Picture or Videos</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/>) ▶▶ Set an image/video</p>
Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/Messages	<p>▶▶ <b>Disp. Phone Book Image</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>ON</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p>

**Start Here**  ▶▶ **Settings** ▶▶  ▶▶ **Slide-style Setting** ▶▶

Open New Mail Window by Opening Handset	<p>▶▶ <b>Setting When Open</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Display New Mail</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p>
Open Missed Calls Window by Opening Handset	<p>▶▶ <b>Setting When Open</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Display Missed Call</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p>

## Answering Incoming Calls

**Start Here**  ▶▶ **Settings** ▶▶  ▶▶ **Incoming Call** ▶▶

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key Except Send Key	<p>▶▶ <b>Answer Setting</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Any Key Answer</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/> - <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/> and <input type="checkbox"/>. The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.</li> </ul>
Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key Except Send Key	<p>▶▶ <b>Answer Setting</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/> ▶▶ <b>Quick Silent</b> ▶▶ <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from <input type="checkbox"/> - <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/> (for voice calls only), <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/> and <input type="checkbox"/> or by opening handset.</li> </ul>



Start Here >> **Settings** >> >> **Slide-style Setting** >>

Set to Answer Calls by Opening Handset

>> **Setting When Open** >> >> **Answer Incoming** >> >>

• When set to *OFF*, operation follows *Answer Setting*.

## Manner Mode

Start Here >> **Settings** >> >> **Incoming Call** >> >> **Manner Mode Setting** >>

Set Manner Mode Type

>> **Manner Mode Set** >> >> Select a Manner Mode >>

• When *Super Silent* is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.

Configure Original Manner Mode

>> **Manner Mode Set** >> >> **Original** >> >> Set each item >>

Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start

>> **Manner Start Time** >> >> **Start Time Set1** or **Start Time Set2** >>   
>> >> >> Enter time >> >> >> >> **1 Time, Daily** () or **Select Day** () >> >> (Select day >> ) >>

Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release

>> **Manner Release Time** >> >> **Release Time Set1** or **Release Time Set2**  
>> >> >> >> Enter time >> >> >> >> **1 Time, Daily** () or **Select Day** () >> >> (Select day >> ) >>

Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

>> **Manner Start Time** or **Manner Release Time** >> >> Select an item >>

• On/off toggles each time you press . Settings (e.g., time) are not updated.

• Use the following procedure to cancel all settings at once.

>> >> **Release All** >> >> **YES** >>



## Checking Call Logs

Start Here >> **Settings** >> >> **Incoming Call** >>

Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

>> **Disp. Call/Receive No.** >> >> Select a color >>

- Pressing toggles the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.
- To reset the color settings to default, press .

## Sounds

Start Here >> **Settings** >> >> **Other Settings** >>

Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

>> **Charge Sound** >> >> **ON** >>

Sound Emitted at Level 1 for First three Seconds

>> **Volume Restriction** >> >> **ON** >>

- Applies to ring tone and alarm.
- After three seconds pass, ring tone and alarm sounds at set volume.

Start Here >> **Settings** >> >> **Slide-style Setting** >>

Set Handset Open/Close Sound

>> **Slide Sound** >> >> **Open Sound** or **Close Sound** >> >> **Melody** >> >> Select a sound >> >> **Ring Time** >> >> Select time sound emitted >>

- Slide and close sounds not emitted when set **OFF**.



Start Here **Tools** **Voice Announce**

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message	<p>▶▶ Select an item  ▶▶ <b>YES</b>  ▶▶ Record sound (for about 15 seconds)</p> <p>• Press  to stop recording.</p>
Play Recorded Sound	▶▶ Select an item with "★"
Delete Recorded Sound	▶▶ Select an item with "★"  ▶▶ <b>Erase</b> ▶▶ <b>YES</b>

## Earphone-Microphone

Start Here **Settings**

Audio Output	▶▶ <i>External Connection</i> ▶▶ <i>Headset Usage Setting</i> ▶▶ <i>Headset+speaker</i> or <i>Headset Only</i>
Microphone Setting	▶▶ <i>External Connection</i> ▶▶ <i>Headset Mic. Setting</i> ▶▶ <i>Built-in Microphone</i> or <i>Headset Microphone</i>
Answer Calls Automatically	▶▶ <i>External Connection</i> ▶▶ <i>Auto Answer Setting</i> ▶▶ <i>Phone</i> or <i>Video Call</i> ▶▶ <b>ON</b> ▶▶ Enter ring time
Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	▶▶ <i>Dialing</i> ▶▶ <i>Headset SW to Dial</i> ▶▶ <i>Voice Call</i> ▶▶ Select a Phone Book search method  ▶▶ Search Phone Book  ▶▶ Select an entry  ▶▶ Select a phone number



## Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-21) >> Select a search method >>  >> <b>OK</b> >> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel the preferred search method, press <b>クリア</b> in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with "★," and then press .</li> </ul>
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] window (P. 2-21) >>  >> <b>Group Setting</b> >>  >> Select a group >>  >> Edit group name >> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name remains the same only for <i>No Group</i>.</li> </ul>
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	>> <b>Tools</b> >>  >> <b>Forwarding Image</b> >>  >> <b>OFF</b> >>

## S! Addressbook Back-up

**Start Here** >> **Tools** >> >> **S! Addressbook Back-up** >>

Set Auto Synchronize	>> <b>Auto Sync Settings</b> >>  >> <b>ON/OFF</b> >>  >> <b>ON</b> >>  >> Enter Security Code >>  >> Set synchronize timing >>  ( >> Set synchronize cycle and day >>  ) >> Select synchronize type >>  >> <b>YES</b> >>  (twice)
Check Auto Synchronize Settings	>> <b>Auto Sync Settings</b> >>  >> <b>Confirm Settings</b> >>



## Outgoing Calls

Start Here ■ ►► **Settings** ►► ■ ►► **Dialing** ►► ■

Save Touch Tones	►► <b>Pause Dial</b> ►► ■ ►►  ►► Enter touch tone numbers ►► ■ • Press and hold  to enter "P" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "*" as Sub Address	►► <b>Sub-address Setting</b> ►► ■ ►► <b>ON</b> ►► ■
Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	►► <b>Prefix Setting</b> ►► ■ ►► Select an item ►►  ►► Enter name ►► ■ ►► Enter prefix numbers ►► ■

## International Calls

Start Here ■ ►► **Settings** ►► ■ ►► **Dialing** ►► ■ ►► **Int'l Dial Assistance** ►► ■

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	►► <b>Auto Int'l Call Set.</b> ►► ■ ►► <b>ON</b> ►► ■ ►► Select a country code ►► ■ ►► <b>國際発信</b> ►► ■ • When <b>OFF</b> is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold . • Select an international access code you set in <b>IDD Prefix Setting</b> .
Change a Country Code	►► <b>Country Code Setting</b> ►► ■ ►► Select an item ►►  ►► Enter country name ►► ■ ►► Enter country code ►► ■
Save an International Access Code	►► <b>IDD Prefix Setting</b> ►► ■ ►► Select an item ►►  ►► Enter international access name ►► ■ ►► Enter international access code ►► ■



## Call Settings

Start Here  » **Settings** »  » **Talk** »

Set Noise Reduction	» <b>Noise Reduction</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>ON</b> » <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Weak Signal Alarm	» <b>Quality Alarm</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>High Tone or Low Tone</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> • Calls may be disconnected without sounding the alarm when signal suddenly becomes too weak.
Set Reconnection Tone	» <b>Reconnect Signal</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>High Tone or Low Tone</b> » <input type="checkbox"/>
Set a Hold Message	» <b>Set Hold Tone</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>On Hold Tone</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » Select a hold tone » <input type="checkbox"/> (» <input type="checkbox"/> )



## Call Costs

Start Here >> Settings >> >> Call Time/Charge >>

<b>Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit*</b>	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>Set Max Cost Limit</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter Security Code &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter cost limit &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>ON</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Set alarm tone &gt;&gt; Set alarm volume &gt;&gt;  ( &gt;&gt; Enter PIN2 &gt;&gt;  )</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A call ends automatically and  appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit.</li> <li>• When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0:        &gt;&gt; <b>Set Max Cost Limit</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter Security Code &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter 0 &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter PIN2 &gt;&gt; </li> </ul>
<b>Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost</b>	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>Auto Reset Total Cost</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter Security Code &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Auto Reset</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>ON</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter PIN2 &gt;&gt; </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <b>ON</b> is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.</li> </ul>

\* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.



## Video Calls

Start Here **Settings** **Video Call**

Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls	<p><b>Select Image</b>  Select an item  <b>Pre-installed</b> or <b>Original</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set an image other than the preinstalled image:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Original</b> <b>Change Setting</b>  Set an image</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	<b>Auto Redial as Voice</b> <b>ON</b>
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	<b>Display Setting</b> <b>Main Display</b> <b>Other Side</b> or <b>My Side</b>
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	<b>Hands-free Switch</b> <b>ON</b>



## Global Roaming

Start Here >> **Settings** >> >> **Int'l Roaming Set** >>

<b>Set Operator</b>	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>NW Search Mode</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Manual</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Select an operator &gt;&gt; </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <i>Auto</i> is set, an available operator is set automatically.</li> <li>• Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.</li> </ul>
<b>Activate Network Re-search for an Available Operator</b>	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>NW Search Mode</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Network Re-search</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Select an operator &gt;&gt; </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An operator is available when <i>NW Search Mode</i> is set to <i>Manual</i>.</li> </ul>
<b>Set Priority for Operators</b>	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>PLMN Setting</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Select an operator &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Change Priority</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Select a position on the priority list &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>YES</b> &gt;&gt; </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <i>Auto</i> or <i>Network Re-search</i> is set under <i>NW Search Mode</i>, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.</li> </ul>
<b>Show Operator Name While Roaming</b>	<p>&gt;&gt; <b>Display Operator Name</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Display ON</b> &gt;&gt; </p>



## S! Mail Settings

Start Here >> Mail Setting >>

Edit Header/Signature	>> Header/Signature >>  >> Edit Header or Edit Signature >>  (twice) >> Edit header/signature >>  >>
Insert Header/Signature Automatically	>> Header/Signature >>  >> Insert Setting >>  >> Header or Signature >>  >>
Set to Check Delivery	>> S! Mail Settings >>  >> Delivery Report >>  >> ON >> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After a recipient receives your S! Mail, a message titled <i>S! Mail Report</i> is sent to your handset.</li> </ul>

## SMS Settings

Start Here >> Mail Setting >> >> SMS Settings >>

Set to Check Delivery	>> SMS Report Request >>  >> ON >> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After a recipient receives your SMS message, a message titled <i>SMS Report</i> is sent to your handset.</li> </ul>
Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages	>> SMS Validity Period >>  >> Select a period >> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>None</i> is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.</li> </ul>
Set SMS Input Language	>> SMS Input Character >>  >> Japanese (70char.) or English (160char.) >>



## Incoming Message Settings

Start Here **Mail Setting**

Customize E-mail Address	<p>▶▶ <i>Custom Mail Address</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ Follow onscreen instructions</p>
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	<p>▶▶ <i>Receiving Setting</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ <i>Alarm Preferred</i> or <i>Operation Preferred</i> ▶▶ </p>
Do Not Show Image Indicators	<p>▶▶ <i>Image/Keyword</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ Press  to take the checkmark off from <i>Image Info</i> ▶▶ </p>
Show Keyword Indicators	<p>▶▶ <i>Image/Keyword</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ Put a checkmark to <i>Keyword Info</i> ▶▶ Select a keyword entry field ▶▶  ▶▶ Enter keyword ▶▶  ▶▶ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator  -  appears.</li> <li>• In case a message contains both the content that matches an image indicator (P. 5-7) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.</li> </ul>
Delete Keywords	<p>▶▶ <i>Image/Keyword</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ Select a keyword ▶▶  ▶▶ <i>Delete Keyword</i> or <i>Delete All Keyword</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ YES ▶▶  ▶▶ Press  to take the checkmark off from <i>Keyword Info</i> ▶▶ </p>
Set Manual Receive	<p>▶▶ <i>S! Mail Settings</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ <i>Message Download</i> ▶▶  ▶▶ <i>Manual</i> ▶▶ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The entire text is receivable by user operation.</li> </ul>



## Reply Settings

Change Quotation Marks	» <b>Mail Setting</b> »  » <b>Header/Signature</b> »  » <b>Edit Quotation Marks</b> »  » Edit quotation mark »
------------------------	--

## Message View Settings & Others

Start Here » **Mail Setting** »

Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll	» <b>Scroll</b> »  » <b>1 Line, 3 Lines or 5 Lines</b> »
Set Font Size of Text	» <b>Font Size</b> »  » Select a size »
Set Message List View	» <b>Mail List Disp.</b> »  » <b>2 Lines, 1 Line or 1 Line+Body</b> »  » <b>Subject, Name or Address</b> »
Play Attached Melodies Automatically	» <b>Start Attachment (auto)</b> »  » <b>ON</b> » <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Automatic play only for received mail.</li> </ul>
Check Mail Settings	» <b>Check Settings</b> »
Reset Mail Settings	» <b>Reset</b> »  » Enter Security Code »  » <b>YES</b> »



## SMS Server Settings

**Start Here**  **Settings**  **Connection Settings**  **SMS Center Selection**

Change SMS Center Address	<p><b>819066519300</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enter SMS Center address <input type="checkbox"/> <b>International</b> or <b>Unknown</b> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.</li></ul>
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	<p><b>Reset</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enter Security Code <input type="checkbox"/> <b>YES</b> <input type="checkbox"/></p>



## Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold **» Browser Settings »**

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold **» PC Site Browser »** **» PC Site Brw. Settings »**

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	<b>» Scroll »</b> <b>» Whole Page, Half Page or Single Line »</b>
Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies	<b>» Downloads »</b> <b>» Display Images or Play Sounds »</b> <b>» ON or OFF »</b>
Clear Cache	<b>» Memory Manager »</b> <b>» Delete Cache »</b> <b>» Enter Security Code »</b> <b>» YES »</b>
Delete Cookies	<b>» Memory Manager »</b> <b>» Delete Cookies »</b> <b>» YES »</b>
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	<b>» Security »</b> <b>» Manufacture Number »</b> <b>» ON or OFF »</b>
Set Whether to Send Referer	<b>» Security »</b> <b>» Send Referer »</b> <b>» ON or OFF »</b>
Enable/Disable Cookies	<b>» Security »</b> <b>» Cookie Settings »</b> <b>» Select an option »</b>
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	<b>» Security »</b> <b>» Script Settings »</b> <b>» Select an option »</b>
Check Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings	<b>» Check Settings or Check PC Site Brw. Set »</b>
Initialize Memory Status of Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser	<b>» Initialized Browser »</b> <b>» Enter Security Code »</b> <b>» YES »</b>



Reset Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Reset</b> , or <b>Reset PC Site Brw. Set</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Enter Security Code</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>YES</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
--	---

## Yahoo! Keitai

**Start Here** Press and hold  **Browser Settings**

Set Font Size	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Font Size</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Select a size</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Flash Sound Effect</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>ON or OFF</b> <input type="checkbox"/>

## PC Site Browser

**Start Here** Press and hold  **PC Site Browser**  **PC Site Brw. Settings**

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Warning Messages</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>OFF</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Page Layout	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Display Mode Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PC Screen or Small Screen</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Select a size</b> <input type="checkbox"/>

## Network Connection Settings

Set Whether to Send Location Information	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Send Location Info</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Enter Security Code</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Confirm, Send or Not Send</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set to <i>Confirm</i> or <i>Send</i> to obtain information.</li> </ul>
--	--



## Channel List

Start Here >> TV >> Channel List

Change Title of Channel List	>> Select a channel list  >> <b>Edit Title</b> >> Edit title
Delete a Channel List	>> Select a channel list  >> <b>Delete This</b> >> <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.</li> </ul>
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	>> Select a channel list  >>  >>  >> <b>Remote Control No.</b> >> Select a remote control number  >> Select a channel  >> Repeat the same step  >>  >> <b>YES</b>
Delete a Channel	>> Select a channel list  >>  >> Select a channel  >>  >> <b>Delete This</b> >> <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete a channel from any channel list except for the currently used list.</li> </ul>

## Image & Sound

Start Here >> TV >> User Settings

Set Subtitle Display	>> <b>Subtitles</b> >> <b>ON (Wide: Bottom), ON (Wide: Top) or OFF</b>
Set Sound Effect	>> <b>TV Effect</b> >> <b>Sound Effect</b> >> Select an effect
Set Visual Image Effect	>> <b>TV Effect</b> >> <b>Visual Image Effect</b> >> Select an effect



Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	<p>» <b>ECO Mode</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>YES</b> » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Following these steps when <i>ECO Mode</i> is on will cancel <i>ECO Mode</i>.</li> </ul>
Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV	<p>» <b>Display Light</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>Constant Light</b> » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>ECO Mode</i> must be off to set <i>Display Light</i>.</li> </ul>
Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV	<p>» <b>Display Light</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>Lighting Duration</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » Enter lighting time » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>ECO Mode</i> must be off to set <i>Display Light</i>.</li> </ul>
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	<p>» <b>Icon Always Show</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> » <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Icons other than for program title no longer appear if set to <i>OFF</i>.</li> </ul>
Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)	<p>» <b>Time Shift Setup</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>Auto ON</b> or <b>Auto OFF</b> » <input type="checkbox"/></p>

## Data Broadcasts

Start Here  » **TV** »  » **User Settings** »  » **Data BC Settings** »

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	<p>» <b>Set Image Disp.</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> » <input type="checkbox"/></p>
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	<p>» <b>Sound Effect</b> » <input type="checkbox"/> » <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> » <input type="checkbox"/></p>

**Set Whether or Not to Show Confirmation Window Again**

▶▶ **Reset Disp. Set.** ▶▶  ▶▶ **YES** or **NO** ▶▶

- Once you select **YES (By default)** in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.

## Recording Programs

**Continue/End Recording at Low Battery**

▶▶ **TV** ▶▶  ▶▶ **User Settings** ▶▶  ▶▶ **Rec. While Low Battery** ▶▶   
▶▶ **ON** or **OFF** ▶▶

## Other Settings

**Start Here**  ▶▶ **TV** ▶▶  ▶▶ **User Settings** ▶▶

**Check TV Settings**

▶▶ **Check TV Settings** ▶▶

**Reset Channel Settings**

▶▶ **Reset Channel Setting** ▶▶  ▶▶ Enter Security Code ▶▶  ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

**Clear Data Broadcast Memory**

▶▶ **Reset Storage Area** ▶▶  ▶▶ Select an affiliated station ▶▶

- To select **Delete This**  
▶▶ **Delete This** ▶▶  ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶
- To select **Delete All**  
▶▶ **Delete All** ▶▶  ▶▶ Enter Security Code ▶▶  ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶

**Rest TV Settings**

▶▶ **Reset TV Settings** ▶▶  ▶▶ Enter Security Code ▶▶  ▶▶ **YES** ▶▶



## Camera/Video Settings

<p><b>Reduce Flicker</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Camera Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-6), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-8), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Camera Settings</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Flicker</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Auto, Mode 1(50Hz) or Mode 2(60Hz)</b> &gt;&gt; </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Cellular Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-7), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-9), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-11) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Camera Settings</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Flicker</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Auto, Mode 1(50Hz) or Mode 2(60Hz)</b> &gt;&gt; </li> </ul>
<p><b>Set Shutter Sound</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Camera Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-6), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-8), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Shutter Sound</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Select a shutter sound &gt;&gt; </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Cellular Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-7), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-9), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-11) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Shutter Sound</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Select a shutter sound &gt;&gt; </li> </ul>



<p><b>Set View When Shooting With Handset Closed</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Camera Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-6), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-8), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Icon Always Show</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> &gt;&gt; </li> <li>• The following indicators appear when set to <b>OFF</b>.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● BI-DO-RI Viewfinder BI-DO-RI indicator</li> <li>● Movie Viewfinder Shooting time</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p><b>Set Shooting Interval/Number of Still Images for Continuous Mode</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Camera Style [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Interval/Number</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Shot Interval</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>0.5 Seconds, 1.0 Seconds</b> or <b>2.0 Seconds</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Shot Number</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Set number with  (Bottom) or  (Top) &gt;&gt; </li> <li>● Cellular Style [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Interval/Number</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Shot Interval</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>0.5 Seconds, 1.0 Seconds</b> or <b>2.0 Seconds</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Shot Number</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; Enter number &gt;&gt; </li> </ul>



## File Storage

<p><b>Toggle Whether to Automatically Save Still Image/Video</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Camera Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-6), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-8), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Auto Save Set</b> <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ ON or OFF</b> <b>▶▶</b> </li> <li>• When set on, the still image/video is automatically saved after shooting to the folder selected in <i>Select to Save</i>.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Set Still Image/Video Save Destination</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Cellular Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-7), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-9), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-11) <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Auto Save Set</b> <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ ON or OFF</b> <b>▶▶</b> </li> <li>• When set on, the still image/video is automatically saved after shooting to the folder selected in <i>Select to Save</i>.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Camera Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-6), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-8), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Select to Save</b> <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Phone or microSD</b> <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Select folder</b> <b>▶▶</b> </li> <li>• Select <i>INBOX</i> to save to memory card.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Cellular Style [BI-DO-RI Viewfinder] (P. 7-7), [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-9), [Continuous Viewfinder] (P. 7-13) or [Movie Viewfinder] (P. 7-11) <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Select to Save</b> <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Phone or microSD</b> <b>▶▶</b> <b>▶▶ Select folder</b> <b>▶▶</b> </li> <li>• Select <i>INBOX</i> to save to memory card.</li> </ul>



## Snap Viewer

<b>Hide Guide at Top of Landscape View</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Camera Style [Snap Viewer] (P. 7-19) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Display Icons</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>OFF</b> &gt;&gt; <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This setting returns to <i>ON</i> when viewer is ended.</li></ul></li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Cellular Style [Snap Viewer] (P. 7-20) &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>Display Icons</b> &gt;&gt;  &gt;&gt; <b>OFF</b> &gt;&gt; <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This setting returns to <i>ON</i> when viewer is ended.</li></ul></li></ul>

\* When at full size in zoom view, the guide appears even when *Display Icons* is set to *OFF*.



## Playback Window

Change Playback Window Mode (Video Playback)	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) >> [P] >> <b>Action Setting</b> >> [■] >> <b>Screen Setting</b> >> [■] >> <b>Normal Screen Mode</b> (Portrait View) or <b>Full Screen Mode</b> (Landscape View) >> [■]
Change Design of Playback Window (Song Playback)	[Music Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) >> [P] >> <b>Action Setting</b> >> [■] >> <b>Change Skin</b> >> [■] >> Select a design >> [■]
Set Image Display Size (Video Playback)	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) >> [P] >> <b>Action Setting</b> >> [■] >> <b>Set Image Disp.</b> >> [■] >> <b>Normal</b> or <b>Fit in Display</b> >> [■]

## When Running S! Appli

Start Here [■] >> **S! Appli** >> [■] >> **Settings** >> [■]

Set Sound Volume	>> <b>Sound/Vib Settings</b> >> [■] >> <b>Volume</b> >> [■] >> [🔊] to adjust volume >> [■]
Set Vibration	>> <b>Sound/Vib Settings</b> >> [■] >> <b>Vibration</b> >> [■] >> <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> >> [■]
Set Backlight	>> <b>Backlight Settings</b> >> [■] >> <b>Switch ON/OFF</b> >> [■] >> <b>Always ON</b> , <b>Always OFF</b> or <b>Link To Phone Set.</b> >> [■]
Set Blinking of Backlight	>> <b>Backlight Settings</b> >> [■] >> <b>Blink</b> >> [■] >> <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> >> [■]



Start Here  **» S! Appli**  **» S! Appli List**

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	» Select an S! Appli <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Security Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Net Access</b> <input type="checkbox"/> » <i>All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable</i> <input type="checkbox"/>
Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	» Select an S! Appli <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Security Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Write User Data</b> <input type="checkbox"/> » <i>All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable</i> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	» Select an S! Appli <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Security Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Reset Security Set.</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» YES</b> <input type="checkbox"/>

## S! Appli Settings

Start Here  **» S! Appli**  **» Settings**

Reset S! Appli Settings	» <i>Reset</i> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Set to Default</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Enter Security Code</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <i>YES</i> <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete All S! Appli	» <i>Reset</i> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Delete All S! App</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>» Enter Security Code</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <i>YES</i> <input type="checkbox"/>



## S! Quick News

Start Here  » Entertainment  » S! Quick News  » Settings

Hide S! Quick News in Standby	» Standby Settings <input type="checkbox"/> » Standby Disp. Set. <input type="checkbox"/> » OFF <input type="checkbox"/> (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	» Standby Settings <input type="checkbox"/> » Speed Settings <input type="checkbox"/> » Fast, Normal or Slow <input type="checkbox"/> (twice)
Set Information to appear in S! Quick News	» Standby Settings <input type="checkbox"/> » Unread & Read Set. <input type="checkbox"/> » Unread Only or Unread & Read <input type="checkbox"/> (twice)
Hide S! Quick News Images	» Set Image Disp. <input type="checkbox"/> » OFF <input type="checkbox"/> (twice)
Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents	» Del. Quick News <input type="checkbox"/> » YES <input type="checkbox"/> (twice) » Enter Security Code <input type="checkbox"/> (three times)

## S! Info Channel

Start Here  » Entertainment  » S! Info Ch./Weather  » Settings

Set Whether to Display Shortcut for New Received Information	» S! Information Notif. <input type="checkbox"/> » ON or OFF <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Font Size for Web Pages	» Font Size <input type="checkbox"/> » Select font size <input type="checkbox"/>



Start Here  >> **Settings** >>  >> **Display** >>  >> **Font** >>

Set Font Size for Ticker

>> **Character Size** >>  >> **Separate Setting** >>  >> **S! Info Ch.** >>  >>  
Select font size >>  >>

## Weather Indicators

Start Here  >> **Entertainment** >>  >> **S! Info Ch./Weather** >>  >> **Weather Indicator** >>  >> **Settings** >>

Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information

>> **Weather Update** >>  >> **ON or OFF** >>  (>> **YES** >> )

Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby

>> **Standby Setting** >>  >> **ON or OFF** >>

Set Whether to Display Shortcut for Received New Weather Information

>> **Weather Notif.** >>  >> **ON or OFF** >>



## Text Entry

Start Here  >> **Settings** >>  >> **Other Settings** >>  >> **Character Input Set** >>

Set Text Input Method	>> <b>Input Mode</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select an input method >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Conversion	>> <b>Conversion</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	>> <b>T9 Change Mode</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>T9 Kanji Change Mode</b> or <b>T9 Kana Change Mode</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Clear Learning History	>> <b>Clear Learned</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Enter Security Code >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>T9/Conversion/Pic.</b> or <b>Kana/Kanji Change/Face</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Change Font Size	>> <b>CHG Input Size</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a size >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode	>> <b>Auto Cursor</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Fast, Normal, Slow</b> or <b>OFF</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set speed cursor moves when entering characters.</li> </ul>

## Key

Start Here  >> **Settings** >>  >> **Keypad Setting** >>

Set Key Sound Off	>> <b>Keypad Sound</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>OFF</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key	>> <b>Shortcut-key Setting</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Select a function >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>YES</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alternatively, press and hold <input type="checkbox"/> in Standby to set <i>Shortcut-key Setting</i>.</li> <li>• To return to original settings, press <input type="checkbox"/>, select <i>Reset Shortcut-Key</i>, and press <input type="checkbox"/>.</li> </ul>



### Osaifu-Keitai®

Set illumination for IC Card	<input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Tools</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>IC Card Illumination</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>ON or OFF</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete all Lifestyle-Appli	<input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>S! Appli</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Settings</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Reset</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Delete All LifeApp</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Enter Security Code</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>YES</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Whether to Enable Opening from Browser	<input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Tools</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Interface Settings</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Enter Security Code</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>Browser</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>ON or OFF</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>



## Resetting Handset

Start Here  >> **Settings** >>  >> **Other Settings** >>

<b>Reset All Settings to Default</b>	>> <b>Reset Settings</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Enter Security Code >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>YES</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Initialize Handset to Default Status</b>	>> <b>Initialize</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> Enter Security Code >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>YES</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> >> <b>YES</b> >> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts.</li> <li>• When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored.</li> <li>• Your Security Code will also be reset to default.</li> </ul>





# Appendix

<b>Multi Function Combinations .....</b>	<b>15-2</b>	<b>Warranty &amp; After Sales Service .....</b>	<b>15-51</b>
<b>Software Update .....</b>	<b>15-4</b>	Warranty .....	15-51
Updating Software .....	15-4	After Sales Service .....	15-51
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>15-6</b>	<b>Customer Service.....</b>	<b>15-52</b>
<b>Text Entry Key Assignments.....</b>	<b>15-11</b>		
In 5-touch Mode.....	15-11		
In 2-touch Mode.....	15-12		
In T9 Input Mode .....	15-13		
<b>Kuten Code List .....</b>	<b>15-14</b>		
<b>Weather Indicators .....</b>	<b>15-20</b>		
Indicator List.....	15-20		
<b>Menu List .....</b>	<b>15-21</b>		
<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>15-35</b>		
Main Specifications .....	15-35		
Handset Materials .....	15-36		
Maximum Number of Storable Items .....	15-37		
Memory Card Folders & Files.....	15-38		
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>15-40</b>		



# Multi Function Combinations

Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo! Keitai menu	S! Appli	Settings	Data Folder	Tools	Optional Services	Phone Book	Own Data	MUSIC	TV	Camera	Original Menu
Mail Group Function	○ <sup>2</sup>	○	○	○ <sup>6</sup>	○	○ <sup>8</sup>	○	○ <sup>13</sup>	○	○	○	○	○
Yahoo! Keitai Group Function	○	×	○	○ <sup>6</sup>	○	○ <sup>8</sup>	○	○ <sup>13</sup>	○	○	○	○	○
S! Appli Group Function	○	○	×	○ <sup>6</sup>	○	○ <sup>8</sup>	○	○ <sup>13</sup>	○	○	○	○	○
Settings Group Function	○	○	○	×	○	○ <sup>8</sup>	×	○ <sup>13</sup>	○	○	○	○	○
Tools Group Function <sup>1</sup>	○	○	○	○ <sup>6</sup>	×	×	○	×	×	○ <sup>6</sup>	○ <sup>6</sup>	×	○
TV & MUSIC Group Function	○ <sup>3</sup>	○ <sup>4</sup>	○ <sup>5</sup>	○ <sup>6</sup>	○ <sup>4</sup>	○ <sup>6</sup>	○	○ <sup>13</sup>	○	×	×	○ <sup>16</sup>	○
During a Voice Call	○	○	×	×	×	○ <sup>9</sup>	○ <sup>11 12</sup>	○ <sup>13</sup>	○ <sup>14</sup>	×	×	×	○
During a Video Call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected	○	○	○	○ <sup>6</sup>	○	○ <sup>8</sup>	○	○ <sup>13</sup>	○	×	×	○	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

- 1 Except **Receive Ir Data** and **USIM Operation** which cannot be activated with another function.
- 2 **Compose Message** and **Compose SMS** cannot be activated at the same time.
- 3 Audio functions such as those for playing attached melodies and videos cannot be activated at the same time as **Music Player** or **TV**.



## Multi Function Combinations

- 4 Audio functions such as those for playing melodies and videos cannot be activated at the same time as Music Player. TV is temporarily paused.
- 5 S! Appli cannot be activated when Music Player is playing. TV is temporarily paused.
- 6 Cannot be activated depending on the function.
- 7 Only *Pause Dial*, *IC Card Lock Set.*, *Keypad Sound* and *Network Status* are available.
- 8 *Receive Ir Data*, *Voice Announce* and *USIM Operation* are unavailable.
- 9 Only the following functions are available: *Schedule*, *Calculator*, *Dictionary*, *Text Memo*, *To Do List*, *IC Card Lock Set. (Osaifu-Keitai)*, *S! Addressbook Back-up*, *Account Details* and *Voice Memo* during a call.
- 10 Voice memo during a call is available only when accessed from video call function menu.
- 11 Playing messages at Voice Mail Center is impossible.
- 12 *Caller ID Notification* is unavailable.
- 13 *Restrictions* is unavailable.
- 14 *Common Phrases* and *Own Dictionary* are unavailable.
- 15 Only *Booking Program List*, *Timer Recording List* and *Program Guide* (only during packet transmission) are available.
- 16 Camera cannot be activated when Music Player is playing or TV is activated.





### Using Regular Updates

A confirmation for software update appears at the scheduled time. Press  or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).



Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Are you pressing and holding  ?	P. 1-18
	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-13
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-22
	Is the battery terminal dirty?	-
It takes a long time to turn on handset.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g. Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-13
	Is the AC charger plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-16
	Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	
Battery drains too fast.	Has the battery reached the end of its service life? The battery life may shorten depending on the usage environment.	P. 1-13
	Do you use handset where <b>OUT</b> appears often?	P. 1-8
	The battery operation time fluctuates according to how you use handset.	P. 1-13

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are you calling using the area code?	-
	Are you covering the area around the antenna with your fingers?	P. 1-2
	Are you pressing  after entering the phone number?	P. 3-3
	Is the USIM Card inserted?	P. 1-12
	Has <b>Emission OFF Mode</b> been set?	P. 4-8
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 14-19
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is <b>Dial/sending Mail</b> specified to be locked in Custom Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is <b>Restrict Dialing</b> set?	P. 2-23
A message is heard saying that the number you have reached is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-



Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Only a busy tone is heard after dialing a phone number.	Does <b>Network is busy at this moment</b> Please try again later appear in Display?	-
	Is the USIM Card inserted?	P. 1-12
	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
Cannot receive calls. The incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-20
	Are you outside the service area or where signals are weak?	-
	Have incoming calls been prohibited?	P. 4-7
	Is handset in <b>Emission OFF Mode</b> ?	P. 4-8
	Is <b>Ring Volume</b> set to <b>Silent</b> ?	P. 14-10
<b>OUT</b> appears.	Are you covering the area around the antenna with your fingers?	P. 1-2
	Are you outside the service area or where signals are weak?	-

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
The other party's voice is too loud during calls.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
A snapping sound occurs during calls.	Are you in a location with weak signals? This sound occurs when signals are weak and handset switches to a different area.	-
Handset is slow to react when keys are pressed.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is <b>Keypad Sound</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 14-39
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-20



Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Side Keys and Front Keys are inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
There is no response when keys are pressed.	Has Dial Lock or Keypad Lock been set?	P. 4-3, P. 4-4
Nothing appears in Display.	Is Power Saver Mode activated?	P. 14-7
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35°C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is <b>Brightness</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to <b>Level 1</b> ?	P. 14-7
	Has <b>Screen Filter</b> been set to <b>ON</b> ? Set <b>Screen Filter</b> on/off by pressing and holding <b>[8]</b> .	P. 14-6

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Display backlight does not light.	Is <b>Lighting</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 14-7
	Is Power Save Mode set?	P. 1-23
A message appears instead of an image, video or song.	The image or video is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. <b>Not available</b> and <b>No preview data</b>	-
 appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
The Flash <sup>®</sup> appearing in Standby is paused.	If  is pressed while a wallpaper Flash <sup>®</sup> is running it will pause. Play continues after a while.	-
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the <b>Flicker</b> setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 14-31



Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with <b>Flicker</b> not set to <b>Auto</b> ? Set <b>Flicker</b> to <b>Auto</b> .	P. 14-31
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are blurred.	Select settings suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-16
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal? Is Digital TV Antenna extended?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-5
<b>Insert USIM</b> appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-12
<b>Insert microSD</b> appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 12-10
<b>Replace with a new one or check the disk</b> appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 12-18

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<b>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</b> appears.	This may be due to errors or heavy traffic on the voice call lines or packet transmission network. Try again after a while. Emergency calls to 110, 119 and 118 are still possible.	-
<b>Function cannot operate any more</b> appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-
The earphone-microphone cannot be used.	Has <b>Headset Mic. Setting</b> been set to <b>Built-in Microphone</b> ?	P. 14-15
<b>Other function active Cannot start</b> appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
<b>Other function active Cannot operate</b> appears.		



Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<i>Memory shortage</i> appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-
<i>Connection failed</i> appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
 (Memory card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted. Perform memory card check.	P. 12-18
Osai-fu-Keitai <sup>®</sup> cannot be used.	Has the battery run out?	P. 1-16
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 11-4



## In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
[1]	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ <sup>1</sup>	. / @ - : ~ <sup>1</sup> _ 1	1
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ <sup>2</sup>	a b c A B C <sup>2</sup>	2
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ <sup>3</sup>	d e f D E F <sup>3</sup>	3
[4]	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ <sup>4</sup>	g h i G H I <sup>4</sup>	4
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ <sup>5</sup>	j k l J K L <sup>5</sup>	5
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ <sup>6</sup>	m n o M N O <sup>6</sup>	6
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ <sup>7</sup>	p q r s P Q R S <sup>7</sup>	7
[8]	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ <sup>8</sup>	t u v T U V <sup>8</sup>	8
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ <sup>9</sup>	w x y z W X Y Z <sup>9</sup>	9
[0]	わをんわー	ワヲンワ <sup>2</sup> ー <sup>0</sup>	0	0 + <sup>3</sup>
[*]	. ° 456	. ° 456	_____45	*
[#]	、。?!・Space <sup>7</sup>	、。?!・Space <sup>7</sup>	、。?!'-'&()¥Space	#

- 1 Appears as “~” during double-byte entry.
- 2 The lower case of “ワ” can be entered in double-byte mode.
- 3 Press and hold [\*] to enter “+.”
- 4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
- 5 Press [\*] to insert line feed “↓.”
- 6 Before confirming characters, press [0] to display “\_” and press again in this state to enter “° ” or “° .”
- 7 “、” “。” “?” “!” and “・” cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary or in USIM Phone Book.



## In 2-touch Mode

## In Double-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
				っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			<sup>1</sup>	
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#			<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>	
	や		ゆ		よ						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん	°	°	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ			、	。						

## In Single-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
				ッ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	\	&			<sup>1</sup>	
8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#			<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>	
	ヤ		ユ		ヨ						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	ac.jp	@softbank.ne.jp		
0	リ	ヲ	ン	°	°	6	7	8	9	0	
	-	'		,	.	www	.com	html	http//	https//	

• Katakana are entered in double-byte mode when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

- 1 Can be entered as double-byte characters when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.
  - 2 Press to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes. Pressing after entering an upper case character switches to the lower case character.
- : A space is entered for these key combinations.



## In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
1	Row あ, 1	Row ア, 1	. / @ ? ! ( ) , - _ : ' ~ ^ & ¥ 1 Space
2	Row か, 2	Row カ, 2	A B C a b c 2
3	Row さ, 3	Row サ, 3	D E F d e f 3
4	Row た, 4	Row タ, 4	G H I g h i 4
5	Row な, 5	Row ナ, 5	J K L j k l 5
6	Row は, 6	Row ハ, 6	M N O m n o 6
7	Row ま, 7	Row マ, 7	P Q R S p q r s 7
8	Row や, 8	Row ヤ, 8	T U V t u v 8
9	Row ろ, 9	Row ロー, 9	W X Y Z w x y z 9
0	わをん わー, 0	ワヨン ワ <sup>4</sup> ー, 0	0
*	1 2	1 2	2
#	3	3	6

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode."
  - Numbers do not appear when entering readings in USIM Phone Book and Own Dictionary.
  - Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.  
Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.  
Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.
  - Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.
- 1 When editing a reading, pressing adds/cancels " " or "° ."
  - 2 Press to insert line feed "↓."
  - 3 "、" "。" "、" "、" "、" "、" "、" and "(space)" appear right after a reading or character is determined.
  - 4 The lower case of "ワ" can be entered in double-byte mode.
  - 5 "ー" is entered in double-byte mode.
  - 6 Each time pressed, cycles through Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode



# Kuten Code List

●Actual Display font may differ in appearance from the following.

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes																
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9																						
010	!	~	°	:	:	:	:	:	?	037	f	g	h	i	s	j	k	l	m	n	o	064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ω	ο	π	ρ	139	∴	∩	∪		
011	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω	φ	ω	ο	π	ρ	140	∴	∩	∪		
012	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	039	p	z										070													160				
013	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	040												071													161				
014	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	041												072													162				
015	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	042												073													163				
016	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	043												074													164				
017	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	044												075													165				
018	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	045												076													166				
019	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	046												077													167				
020	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	047												078													168				
021	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	048												080													169				
022	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	050												081													170				
023	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	051												082													171				
024	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	052												083													172				
026	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	053												084													173				
027	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	054												085													174				
028	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	055												086													175				
029	∠	>	∧	∨	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	056												087													176				
031	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	057											088													177				
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	058											089													178				
033	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	060											090													179				
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	061											091													180				
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z		062											092														181			
036						a	b	c	d	e	063											093														182			



# Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																					
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
178	於汚甥										214	吃脚弓窮拒魚巨粟	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	215	却吸球居漁	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	249	効	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	286	尺憲腫履	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	287	弱種樹	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	288	若狩授	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	289	寂珠投	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	290	秋蹴十叔術循邊緒徐	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	291	央押黃乙	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	292	於	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	293	秀誓充統出准巡庶序	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	294	應	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	295	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	296	應	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	297	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	298	應	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	299	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	300	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	301	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	302	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	303	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	304	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	305	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	306	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	307	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	308	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	309	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	310	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	311	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	312	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	313	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	314	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	315	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	316	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	317	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	318	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	319	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	320	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	321	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	322	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	323	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	324	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	325	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	326	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	327	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	328	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	329	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	330	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	331	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	332	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	333	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	334	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	335	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	336	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	337	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	338	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	339	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	340	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	341	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	342	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	343	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	344	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	345	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	346	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	347	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	348	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	349	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	350	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	351	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	352	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	353	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	354	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	355	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	356	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	357	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	358	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	359	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	360	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	361	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	362	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	363	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	364	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	365	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	366	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	367	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	368	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	369	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	370	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	371	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	372	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	373	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	374	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	375	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	376	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	377	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	378	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	379	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	380	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	381	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	382	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	383	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	384	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	385	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	386	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	387	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	388	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	389	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	390	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	391	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	392	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	393	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	394	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	395	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	396	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	397	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	398	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	399	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	400	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	401	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	402	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	403	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	404	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	405	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	406	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	407	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	408	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	409	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	410	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	411	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	412	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	413	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	414	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	415	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	416	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	417	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	418	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	419	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	420	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	421	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	422	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	423	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	424	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	425	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	426	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	427	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	428	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	429	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	430	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	431	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	432	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	433	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	434	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	435	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	436	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	437	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	438	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	439	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	440	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	441	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	442	秋	0	1	2	3	4	5	6</











## Indicator List

Normally Displayed	
	Clear (Day)
	Clear (Night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder and Lighting
	0% Chance of Rain
	10% Chance of Rain
	20% Chance of Rain
	30% Chance of Rain
	40% Chance of Rain
	50% Chance of Rain
	60% Chance of Rain
	70% Chance of Rain
	80% Chance of Rain
	90% Chance of Rain
	100% Chance of Rain
	Later
	Partial

Pollen	
	Low
	Somewhat High
	High
	Extremely High

Sakura Blossoms	
	Budding
	Near Full Blossom
	Full Blossom
	Falling

Autumn Leaves	
	Unchanged
	Changing
	Perfect for Viewing
	Falling

UV Rays	
	Weak
	Somewhat Strong
	Strong
	Extremely Strong

Typhoon	
	Forming
	Approaching
	Emergency Status

Disaster	
	Heavy Rain
	Strong Winds

Topic	
	Notification
	Special



# Menu List

• Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to *Standard*.

## Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	—	—	Welcome message from CASIO stored	P. 5-10
Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-10, P. 5-23
Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-24
Compose Message	—	—	—	P. 5-3
Compose SMS	—	—	—	P. 5-5
Server Mail	Mail List	—	—	P. 5-8
	Server Mail Memory	—	—	P. 5-21
Retrieve New	—	—	—	P. 5-20
Template	—	—	—	P. 5-19
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	—	—	P. 14-23
	Scroll	—	1 Line	P. 14-24
	Font Size	—	Standard	
	Mail List Disp.	—	1 Line+Body	
	Start Attachment (auto)	—	OFF	
	Header/Signature	—	Edit Header, Edit Signature, Edit Quotation Marks: Not Stored, Insert Setting: Selected	
	Mail Box Lock	—	Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Server Mail: Unlocked	P. 5-12
	Receiving Setting	—	Operation Preferred	P. 14-23
	Image/Keyword	—	Image Info: ON, Keyword Info: OFF	



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	S! Mail Settings	—	Message Download: Auto(All), Delivery Report: OFF	P. 14-22, P. 14-23
	SMS Settings		SMS Report Request: OFF, SMS Validity Period: 3 Days, SMS Input Character: Japanese(70char.)	P. 14-22
	Check Settings		—	P. 14-24
	Reset		—	

### ◎Yahoo! Keitai

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	One bookmark for accessing CASIO website stored	P. 6-10
Saved Pages	—	—	—	
History	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Enter URL	—	—	—	
PC Site Browser	—	—	See “◎PC Site Browser” (P. 15-23).	P. 6-5
Browser Settings	Font Size	—	Standard	P. 14-27
	Scroll		Single Line	P. 14-26
	Downloads		Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	
	Flash Sound Effect		ON	P. 14-27
	Memory Manager		—	P. 14-26
	Security		Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	
	Check Settings		—	
	Initialized Browser		—	



2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Browser Settings	Reset	—	—	P. 14-27

## ◎ PC Site Browser

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
History	—	—	—	P. 6-6
Enter URL	—	—	—	
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
PC Site Brw. Settings	Warning Messages	—	ON	P. 14-27
	Scroll	—	Single Line	P. 14-26
	Display Mode Settings	—	PC Screen (PC Screen: 100%, Small Screen: Standard)	P. 14-27
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 14-26
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check PC Site Brw. Set	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
Reset PC Site Brw. Set	—	—	P. 14-27	

## ◎ S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	Download S! App	—	—	P. 9-8
	Download LifeApp	—	—	P. 11-3



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Settings	Sound/Vib Settings	—	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 14-35
	Backlight Settings	—	Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON	
	Reset	—	—	P. 14-36
Information	—	—	—	P. 9-8

### TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	—	—	—	P. 8-6
Program Guide	—	—	—	P. 8-9
Booking Program List	—	—	—	P. 8-13
Timer Recording List	—	—	—	
Result Timer Rec	—	—	—	P. 8-19
TV Link	—	—	—	P. 8-16
Channel List	—	—	—	P. 8-15
Channel Settings	—	—	—	P. 8-5
User Settings	Subtitles	—	ON (Wide: Bottom)	P. 14-28
	Rec. While Low Battery		ON	P. 14-30
	TV Effect		Sound Effect: Auto, Visual Image Effect: Dynamic	P. 14-28
	ECO Mode		—	P. 14-29
	Display Light		Constant Light	
	Data BC Settings		Set Image Disp.: ON, Sound Effect: ON	
	Icon Always Show		ON	
	Time Shift Setup		Auto ON	



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
User Settings	Check TV Settings	—	—	P. 14-30
	Reset Channel Setting		—	
	Reset Storage Area		—	
	Reset TV Settings		—	

### ◎ Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
BI-DO-RI	—	—	—	P. 7-6
Photo	—	—	—	P. 7-8
Serial	—	—	—	P. 7-13
Movie	—	—	—	P. 7-10
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-16
Snap Viewer	—	—	—	P. 7-19
Movie Viewer	—	—	—	P. 7-21

### ◎ Entertainment

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	—	—	P. 10-2
	Settings		See "◎Settings under S! Quick News" (P. 15-26).	—
S! Info Ch./Weather	What's New	—	—	P. 10-3
	History		—	
	Register/Cancel		—	
	Get Latest Contents		—	P. 10-6
	Settings		S! Information Notif.: ON, Font Size: Standard	P. 14-37



2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Info Ch./Weathe	Weather Indicator	—	See "☉ Weather Indicator under S! Info Ch./Weather" (P. 15-26).	—
BookSurfing	—	—		P. 10-5

## ☉ Settings under S! Quick News

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	—	OFF	P. 10-6
	General	—	OFF	
	Special	—	ON	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	—	ON	P. 14-37
	Speed Settings	—	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	—	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	—	—	ON	
Del. Quick News	—	—	—	

## ☉ Weather Indicator under S! Info Ch./Weather

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Weather	—	—	—	P. 10-4
Manual Update	—	—	—	P. 10-7
Settings	Weather Update	—	ON	P. 14-38
	Standby Setting	—	ON	
	Weather Notif.	—	ON	



## Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Alarm	—	44	Alarm1-10: OFF	P. 11-14
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 11-6
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 11-13
Dictionary	Enter Word	—	—	P. 2-29
	Text Reader	—	—	P. 11-18
	Reference History	—	—	P. 2-29
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 11-11
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 11-9
Osaifu-Keitai	Lifestyle-Appli	—	—	P. 11-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	—	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock(Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-4
	Call Remote Lock	—	OFF	
	IC Card Illumination	—	ON	P. 14-40
	Interface Settings	—	Browser: ON	
S! Addressbook Back-up	Start Sync	—	—	P. 2-26
	Auto Sync Settings	—	—	P. 14-16
	Sync Log	—	—	P. 2-27
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-16
Text Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-18
Account Details	—	0	—	P. 1-22
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 13-3
Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5、 P. 3-18



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5
Voice Memo	—	43	—	P. 11-12
Voice Announce	—	91	Voice Announce 1: (Not recorded), Voice Announce 2: (Not recorded)	P. 14-15
Forwarding Image	—	—	ON	P. 14-16
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 12-12
USIM Operation	Copy	—	—	P. 2-24
	Delete	—	—	P. 2-33

### ◎ Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	—	46	—	P. 12-2
Melody	—	16	—	
S! Appli	—	—	—	
Ring Songs · Music	—	—	—	
Videos	—	—	—	
Books	—	—	—	
TV	—	—	—	

### ◎ MUSIC

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Download Music	—	—	—	P. 9-4
Search Music	—	—	—	
Resume Play	—	—	—	P. 9-11



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Playlist	—	—	—	P. 9-6
Inbox	—	—	—	P. 9-2
microSD	—	—	—	

### ◎ Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-11
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	P. 3-10
Blog/Mail Member	—	97	—	P. 5-4
Quick List	—	—	—	P. 3-12
Common Phrases	—	38	Fixed common phases at handset initial state	P. 2-15
Own Dictionary	—	82	—	P. 2-16

### ◎ Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 2-19

### ◎ Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Kisekae Theme	—	—	—	P. 14-3
Incoming Call	Ring Volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 14-10
	Select Ring Tone	13	Phone (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Differs according to the model color), Video Call (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Differs according to the model color), Mail (Select Ring Tone: sound 7, Select Receiving Disp.: Differs according to the model color)	



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Incoming Call	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	P. 14-11
	Illumination	89	Set Color (Phone: Color 10, Video Call: Color 8, Mail: Color 1), Set Pattern: Standard, Missed Info: ON	P. 14-11
	Manner Mode Setting	20	Manner Mode Set: Manner Mode, Manner Start Time: OFF, Manner Release Time: OFF	P. 14-13
	Disp. Phone Book Image	—	ON	P. 14-12
	Answer Setting	58	Any Key Answer	
	Mail Ring Time	68	Mail: ON (Ring Time: 05 seconds)	P. 14-11
	Ring Time (sec.)	90	Set Mute Seconds: OFF, Missed Calls Display: Display	P. 4-7
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
Disp. Call/Receive No.	—	Differs according to the model color	P. 14-14	
Talk	Noise Reduction	76	ON	P. 14-18
	Quality Alarm	75	No Tone	
	Reconnect Signal	77	No Tone	
	Set Hold Tone	—	On Hold Tone: Tone 1	
Dialing	Pause Dial	84	—	P. 14-17
	Sub-address Setting	—	OFF	
	Prefix Setting	—	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010)	
	Headset SW to Dial	—	OFF	P. 14-15
	Int'l Dial Assistance	—	Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON, Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix Setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 14-17
Video Call	Visual Preference	—	Normal	P. 3-17



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Video Call	Select Image	—	On Hold, Holding, Substitute Image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice Memo: Pre-installed	P. 14-20
	Auto Redial as Voice		OFF	
	Display Setting		Main Display: Other Side	
	Hands-free Switch		ON	
Display	Display Setting	56	Stand-by Display: Differs according to the model color, Wake-up Display: EXILIM Logotype, Dialing~Mail Rec'd Result: Differs according to the model color	P. 14-4
	Backlight	70	Lighting: ON (Light Time: 15 seconds) + Power Saver Mode (Set Light Time: 1 minute), Charging: Standard, Area: LCD+Keys, Brightness: ON (Level 4)	P. 14-7
	Display Design	86	Differs according to the model color	P. 14-5
	Font	66	Font Type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character Size: Standard	
	Shortcut	63	Theme 1 (S! Quick News List, BI-DO-RI, モバイル便利帳)	P. 14-7
	3D Display Setting	—	ON	P. 14-8
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 14-6
	Original Menu	52	Account Details, Retrieve New, Ring Volume, Vibrator, Alarm, Change Security Code	P. 14-10
	Menu Display Set	57	Menu Display: List, Theme: Differs according to the model color, Memory Focus: ON	P. 14-9
	Viewer Settings	—	Picture	P. 14-6
	Icons	36	—	P. 1-8
	Icons Setting	—	ON	P. 14-10
	Screen Filter	—	OFF	P. 14-6



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Display	Image Display Mode	—	Vivid	P. 14-6
	Mail Rec'd Setting	—	Display Sender	
Call Time/Charge	Call Data	61	—	P. 3-11
	Set Max Cost Limit	—	Notify Setting: OFF	P. 14-19
	Reset Total	60	—	P. 3-19
	Auto Reset Total Cost	—	OFF	P. 14-19
Clock	Set Main Time	31	Auto Time Adjust: Auto, Summer Time: OFF	P. 14-2
	Set Sub Clock	—	Display Method: OFF, Summer Time: OFF, Area Name: Display	
	Clock Display	39	Display: ON, Size: Up Small, Color: Differ according to the model color	
	Alarm Setting	—	Alarm Preferred	P. 14-3
	Clock Alarm Tone Set	—	Sound 10	
	Auto Power ON	—	OFF	
	Auto Power OFF	—	OFF	
Security	Function Lock	—	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	—	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock(Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-4
	Call Remote Lock	—	OFF	
	Keypad Lock	—	After Closed: OFF, Timer: OFF, Lock Key: ON, Security Code: NO	P. 4-4
	Emission OFF Mode	—	NO (not set)	P. 4-8
	Secret Mode	40	—	P. 4-9
	Secret Data Only Mode	41	—	
	Reject Unknown	—	Accept	P. 4-7



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Security	Call Setting W/O ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select Ring Tone: Same as Ring Tone, Select Calling Disp.: Same as Display)	P. 4-7
	Change Security Code	29	9999	P. 1-21
	IC Card Authentic.	—	OFF	P. 4-6
	PIN Setting	—	—	P. 4-2
Slide-style Setting	Setting When Open	—	Answer Incoming, Display New Mail, Display Missed call: OFF	P. 14-12
	Slide Sound	—	Open Sound: Open 1 (Ring Time: 2.0 seconds), Close Sound: close 1 (Ring Tone: 2.0 seconds)	P. 14-14
Keypad Setting	Keypad Sound	—	OFF	P. 14-39
	Shortcut-key Setting	—	Schedule	
External Connection	USB Mode Setting	—	Communication Mode	P. 13-5
	Headset Usage Setting	—	Headset + speaker	P. 14-15
	Headset Mic. Setting	—	Headset Microphone	
	Auto Answer Setting	—	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Connection Settings	SMS Center Selection	—	819066519300	P. 14-25
	Certificate	—	All Certificates: Valid	P. 6-13
	Retrieve NW Info	—	—	P. 1-18
Send Location Info	—	—	Confirm	P. 14-27
Int'l Roaming Set	NW Search Mode	—	Auto	P. 14-21
	PLMN Setting	—	—	
	Display Operator Name	—	Display OFF	
Optional Services	Caller ID Notification	17	Activate/Deactivate: ON	P. 3-21



## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Optional Services	Voice Mail/Divert	—	—	P. 3-14 P. 3-15 P. 3-19
	Call Waiting	—	—	P. 3-20
	Call Barring	—	—	P. 3-21
Other Settings	Charge Sound	—	ON	P. 14-14
	Battery Level	71	—	P. 1-22
	Network Status	—	—	
	Character Input Set	35	Input Mode: 5-touch, Conversion: ON, T9 Change Mode: T9 Kanji Change Mode, CHG Input Size: Standard, Auto Cursor: Normal	P. 14-39
	Volume Restriction	—	ON	P. 14-14
	Reset Settings	23	—	P. 14-41
	Initialize	—	—	
Software Update	—	—	P. 15-4	



## Main Specifications

Model	930CA	
Dimensions (H x W x D)	50 x 112 x 16.5 mm	
Weight	138 g	
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 540 hrs	
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: Approx. 215 min. Video Call: 100 min. or more	
Charging Time	Max. 120 min.	
Display	Type	TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Approx. 3.0 inches
	Pixels	409,920 pixels (854 x 480 dots)
Camera	Imaging device	CMOS
	Effective pixels	Approx. 8.09 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Approx. 7.99 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Up to approx. 3 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files <sup>1</sup>
	Still images for continuous shooting	5 to 10 files <sup>2</sup>
	Still image file format	JPEG

Camera	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 276 sec. <sup>2</sup> Memory card: Up to approx. 120 min. <sup>2</sup>
	Video file format	MP4
TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 155 min. Approx. 230 min. (ECO Mode)
	Maximum recording time	Depends on the memory card capacity(300 min. per 1 GB)
Chaku-Uta <sup>®</sup> and Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup>	Storage Capacity	Phone: 180 MB/Up to 100 files Memory card: Depends on the memory card capacity <sup>3</sup>

- 1 In case the image size is *QVGA(Wallpaper)* and the image quality is set to *Fine* (the file size is 10 KB).
- 2 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	memory card
Image size	SubQCIF(Mail S)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	2MB	Long Time
Recording type	Normal	

- 3 Shared with images, videos and saved pages.



## Handset Materials

Where Used		Material	Finish
Outer casing	Display surface	PC resin + stainless plating	Acrylic UV-cured coating
	Display back	SUS back	Electrodeposited coating
	Keypad surface	PC resin + stainless plating	Acrylic UV-cured coating
Center Front Key		PC resin	Vapor deposition + acrylic UV-cured coating
Shutter key		PC resin	Vapor deposition + acrylic UV-cured coating
Camera lens frame metal (outside)		ABS resin	Vapor deposition + acrylic UV-cured coating
Camera lens frame metal (inside)		Aluminum alloy	Alumite
Strap Pin		Aluminum alloy	Alumite
Battery compartment	Screws	Iron	Nickel plating
	Cover	PC resin	Acrylic UV-cured coating
	Terminal	Copper alloy	Gold plating

Where Used		Material	Finish
Battery (terminal)		Epoxy resin (glass epoxy)	Gold plating
Digital TV Antenna	Tip	ABS resin, bronze	Nickel plating
	Antenna	PA, SUS	—



## Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000 <sup>1</sup>	—
Schedule		2,500	—
To Do List		100	—
Mail	Received messages	1,000 <sup>2 3 4</sup>	1,000 <sup>2</sup>
	Sent messages	400 <sup>2 3 4</sup>	200
	Draft messages	20 <sup>2</sup>	—
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100 <sup>5</sup>	—
	PC Site Browser	100 <sup>5</sup>	—
Saved Pages		100 <sup>2</sup>	50
S! Appli		96 <sup>2</sup>	—
Melodies		400 <sup>2</sup>	—
Songs		100 <sup>2</sup>	—
Template (Graphic Mail)		45 <sup>6</sup>	—

Item	Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Answering Machine	Voice calls: 5 (20 sec. each) Video calls: 2 (20 sec. each)	—
Dialed Calls	30	—
Received Calls (Including Missed Call)	30	—
Speed Dial	10 (Entry Number 000-009)	—

- Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
- The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
- An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
- Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
- Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.
- Includes data stored by default.



## Memory Card Folders &amp; Files

Folder			File	
DCIM	XXXCADCF		Still images captured with handset camera	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Inbox	Backup data of Inbox
			Sent Messages	Backup data of Outbox
			Drafts	Backup data of Draft
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Book	Books
			Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash® files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Pictograms	My Pictograms
Pictures	Still images			
Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies			
Videos	Videos			



Folder			File
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	CA_Folder	Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO		TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX		TV Program recording files



## Number

2-touch Mode .....	2-16
3D Display Setting .....	14-8
5-touch Mode .....	2-13

## A

Access Files .....	12-3
Access Handset Functions .....	2-2
Access the Internet	
From Bookmarks .....	6-10
From Data Broadcasts .....	8-8
From Entered URL Record .....	6-12
From Scanned Data .....	11-24
From TV Links .....	8-16
From URL in Text .....	5-24
From Web Page .....	6-14
PC Site Browser .....	6-5
Using Access History .....	6-3
Using URL History .....	6-6
Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
Account Details .....	1-22
Add folder	
Bookmark .....	6-16
Data Folder .....	12-9
Messages .....	5-23
After Sales Service .....	15-51
Alarm .....	11-14

Cancel .....	11-15
Edit .....	11-23
Release all .....	11-23
Set .....	11-14
Set Priority .....	14-3
Alarm Activation Operations .....	11-15
Alarm Notification Operations	
Schedule .....	11-7
To Do List .....	11-9
Answer Setting .....	14-12
Answer Video Calls .....	3-8
Answer Voice Calls .....	3-4
Answering Machine .....	3-4
Activate When Call Arrives .....	3-5
Play/Delete Messages .....	3-5, 3-18
Settings .....	3-4
Any Key Answer .....	14-12
Attach to Mail	
Bookmark .....	6-16
Delete Attached Files .....	5-18
Files .....	5-3
Shoot Image/Video .....	5-18
Authentication Password .....	13-3
Auto Answer Setting .....	14-15
Auto Cursor .....	2-13
Auto Power On/Off .....	14-3
Auto Redial as Voice .....	14-20
Auto Reset Total Cost .....	14-19

Auto-sort .....	5-12
-----------------	------

## B

Backlight .....	14-7
Bar Code .....	11-16
Bar Code Reader .....	11-16
Check Scanned Data .....	11-17
Delete Scanned Data .....	11-25
Scan .....	11-16
Basic Key Operations .....	1-3
Battery .....	1-13
Installation .....	1-13
Blog/Mail Member .....	5-4
Add Addresses .....	5-4
Delete Addresses .....	5-18
Edit Address .....	5-18
Specify Recipients .....	5-16
Booked Programs .....	8-13
Change Order .....	8-18
Delete .....	8-19
Bookmarks .....	6-10
Access Page .....	6-10
Add Folder .....	6-16
Delete .....	6-16
Delete Folder .....	6-16
Edit URL .....	6-15
Move .....	6-16
Number of Bookmarks .....	6-16



Save .....	6-10
Save Scanned URL .....	11-25
Send by Mail .....	6-16
Sort Folder .....	6-16
<b>Books .....</b>	<b>10-5</b>
<b>BookSurfing® .....</b>	<b>10-5</b>

## C

Calculator .....	11-13
Call Barring .....	3-21
Call Forward .....	3-14
Call Rejection .....	3-16
Call Time/Charge .....	3-11
Call Waiting .....	3-20
Caller ID .....	3-16, 3-21
Calling While Abroad .....	3-13
<b>Camera .....</b>	<b>7-2</b>
Add Frame .....	7-14
Auto Timer .....	7-14
Best Shot .....	7-17, 7-18
Brightness .....	7-17, 7-18
Camera Menu Settings .....	7-16
Camera Mode .....	7-16, 7-18
Camera Style .....	7-3
Cellular Style .....	7-4
Color Mode Set .....	7-24
Continuous Shooting .....	7-13
Image Size .....	7-17, 7-18
Memory Info .....	7-24
Settings .....	14-31
Shooting in BI-DO-RI/Photo .....	7-6
Shooting Videos .....	7-10
Viewfinder .....	7-3
<b>Center Access Code .....</b>	<b>1-21</b>
<b>Certificate .....</b>	<b>6-13</b>
<b>Change .....</b>	<b>14-35</b>
Entry Number .....	2-31
Font Size (Message Text) .....	5-25
Graphic Mail Effects .....	5-18
Network Password .....	3-21
PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2
Security Code .....	1-21
Shortcuts .....	2-28
To, Cc or Bcc .....	5-16
<b>Change Skin .....</b>	<b>14-35</b>
<b>Channel List .....</b>	<b>14-28</b>
Delete a Channel .....	14-28
Remote Control Numbers .....	14-28
Save Stations of a Different	
Area .....	8-15
Switch .....	8-15
<b>Channel Settings .....</b>	<b>8-5</b>
Automatic .....	8-15
Reset .....	14-30
<b>Character Stamp .....</b>	<b>12-8</b>
<b>Charge Battery .....</b>	<b>1-13</b>
AC Charger .....	1-16
<b>Charge Sound .....</b>	<b>14-14</b>
<b>Check Battery Level .....</b>	<b>1-22</b>
<b>Check PC Site Browser Settings ..</b>	<b>14-26</b>
<b>Check Settings (Mail) .....</b>	<b>14-24</b>
<b>Check TV Settings .....</b>	<b>14-30</b>
<b>CHG Input Method .....</b>	<b>2-12</b>
<b>CHG Input Size .....</b>	<b>14-39</b>
<b>Clear Number (Text Entry) .....</b>	<b>14-39</b>
<b>Clock .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
<b>Clock Alarm Tone Set .....</b>	<b>14-3</b>
<b>Clock Display .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
<b>Codes .....</b>	<b>1-21</b>
Center Access Code .....	1-21
Network Password .....	1-21
Security Code .....	1-21
<b>Compose &amp; Send Messages .....</b>	<b>5-3</b>
Attach Files .....	5-3
Compose S! Mail .....	5-3
Compose SMS .....	5-5
Delete Receiver .....	5-16
Edit .....	5-23
From Phone Book .....	2-32
From Quick List .....	3-12
From Scanned Data .....	11-24
From Web Page .....	6-14
Graphic Mail .....	5-4
Insert Header/Signature .....	5-17



- Save ..... 5-17
  - Specify Recipients from a Blog/Mail Member List ..... 5-16
  - To/Cc/Bcc ..... 5-16
  - Compose New Messages** ..... 5-3, 5-5
  - Continuous Shooting** ..... 7-13
  - Conversion** ..... 2-13, 14-39
  - Cookie Settings** ..... 14-26
  - Copy**
    - Between Handset & Memory
    - Card ..... 12-13
    - Event ..... 11-22
    - Phone Book Entries ..... 2-24, 2-33
    - SMS Messages ..... 5-22
    - Text ..... 2-15
  - Custom Lock** ..... 4-3
  - Customer Service** ..... 15-52
  - Customize by Group** ..... 2-23
- 
- D
- Data BC settings** ..... 14-29
  - Data Broadcasts** ..... 8-8
  - Data Folder** ..... 12-2
    - Add Folder ..... 12-9
    - Change Order of Files ..... 12-15
    - Check File Information ..... 12-15
    - Delete Files ..... 12-18
    - Delete Folder ..... 12-17
  - Edit File Name ..... 12-17
  - Edit Folder Name ..... 12-17
  - Edit Still Images ..... 12-7
  - Edit Videos ..... 12-8
  - Memory Info ..... 12-17
  - Move Files ..... 12-9
  - Open Files ..... 12-3
  - Original Animation ..... 12-4
  - Playlist (Melody) ..... 12-4
  - Playlist (Video) ..... 12-5
  - Ringtone ..... 12-15
  - Secret Folders ..... 4-9
  - Stand-by display ..... 12-15
  - Delete All S! Appli** ..... 14-36
  - Delete Cache** ..... 14-26
  - Delete Cookies** ..... 14-26
  - Delivery Report (S! Mail)** ..... 14-22
  - Dial**
    - From Dialed Calls ..... 3-10
    - From Phone Book ..... 2-21
    - From Quick List ..... 3-12
    - From Received Calls ..... 3-10
    - From Redial ..... 3-10
    - From Scanned Data ..... 11-24
    - From Web Page ..... 6-14
    - Global Roaming ..... 3-13
    - International Calls ..... 3-3
    - Phone Number in Message Text ... 5-24
  - Video Calls ..... 3-7
  - Voice Calls ..... 3-3
  - Dial Lock** ..... 4-3
  - Dialed Calls** ..... 3-10
  - Dictionaries** ..... 2-16
  - Disp. Call/Receive No.** ..... 14-14
  - Disp. Phone Book Image** ..... 14-12
  - Display Design** ..... 14-5
  - Display Indicators** ..... 1-8
  - Display Light (TV)** ..... 14-29
  - Display Mode Setting** ..... 14-27
  - Display Operator Name** ..... 14-21
  - Display Setting** ..... 14-4
    - Video Call ..... 14-20
  - Download**
    - Music ..... 9-4
    - S! Appli ..... 9-8
    - Templates (Graphic Mail) ..... 5-19
  - Downloads** ..... 14-26
  - DPOF setting** ..... 12-14
- 
- E
- Earphone-Microphone Settings** ..... 14-15
  - Earpiece Volume** ..... 3-3, 3-8
  - ECO Mode** ..... 14-29
  - Edit**
    - Address (Blog/Mail Member) ..... 5-18



Alarm Settings .....	11-23
Blog/Mail Member List Name .....	5-18
Event .....	11-21
File Name (Data Folder) .....	12-17
Folder Name (Bookmark) .....	6-16
Folder Name (Data Folder) .....	12-17
Folder Name (Messages) .....	5-23
Folder Name (Templates) .....	2-30
Own Dictionary .....	2-30
Phone Book Entry .....	2-32
Readings in T9 Input Mode .....	2-17
Still Images .....	12-7
Template (Graphic Mail) .....	5-19
Templates	
(Common Phrases) .....	2-15, 2-30
Text .....	2-15
Text Memo .....	11-11
URL (Bookmark) .....	6-15
Videos .....	12-8
View Timer Settings .....	8-18
<b>Edit Still Images</b> .....	<b>12-7</b>
Brightness .....	12-16
Change Size .....	12-16
Character Stamp .....	12-8
Correct Backlight .....	12-16
Frame .....	12-7
Marker stamp .....	12-7
Refresh skin tone .....	12-17

Retouch .....	12-16
Rotate .....	12-16
Trim away .....	12-8
<b>Edit Videos</b> .....	<b>12-8</b>
<b>Emission OFF Mode</b> .....	<b>4-8</b>
<b>Enter URL</b> .....	<b>6-3, 6-6</b>
Delete Records .....	6-13

**F**

<b>FeliCa Mark</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
IC Card Authentication .....	4-6
IC Card Illumination .....	14-40
OsaiFu-Keitai® .....	11-2
<b>Flash Sound Effect</b> .....	<b>14-27</b>
<b>Font</b> .....	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Font Size (Internet)</b> .....	<b>14-27</b>
<b>Font Size (Mail)</b> .....	<b>14-24</b>
<b>Format Memory Card</b> .....	<b>12-12</b>
<b>Forward (Message)</b> .....	<b>5-24</b>
<b>Forwarding Image</b>	
(Phone Book) .....	14-16
<b>Frame</b> .....	<b>12-7</b>
<b>Front Keys</b> .....	<b>1-7</b>
Basic Operations .....	1-7
Operations .....	1-7
Quick Launcher .....	2-3

**G**

<b>Global Roaming</b> .....	<b>3-13</b>
Call Japan and Other Countries .....	3-13
Call within the Same Country .....	3-13
Settings .....	14-21
<b>Graphic Mail</b>	
Cancel Effects .....	5-19
Create .....	5-4
Create from a Template .....	5-19
Delete Templates .....	5-19
Edit a Template .....	5-19
Save template .....	5-19
<b>Group Calling</b> .....	<b>3-20</b>
<b>Group Setting (Phone Book)</b> .....	<b>14-16</b>

**H**

<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Handsfree</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>
<b>Hands-free Switch (Video Call)</b> ...	<b>14-20</b>
<b>Header/Signature</b> .....	<b>14-22, 14-24</b>
<b>Headset SW to Dial</b> .....	<b>14-15</b>
<b>Headset Usage Setting</b> .....	<b>14-15</b>
<b>History</b> .....	<b>6-3, 6-6</b>
Delete .....	6-12
<b>Holidays</b> .....	<b>11-7</b>

**I**

IC Card Authentication .....	4-6
Icon Always Show .....	14-29
Icons Setting .....	14-10
Illumination .....	14-11
Image	
Edit .....	12-7
Open Image File .....	12-3
Image Info Mail .....	5-7
Image/Keyword Info Settings ....	14-23
Incoming Message Image .....	14-12
Incoming Message Info .....	14-6
Infrared .....	13-2
Authentication Password .....	13-3
Receive All .....	13-4
Receive One File .....	13-3
Send All Ir Data .....	13-3
Send One File .....	13-3
Infrared Port .....	1-2
Initial Setup .....	1-18
Initialize	
Handset .....	14-41
Input Mode .....	14-39
Insertion & Removal	
Battery .....	1-13
Memory Card .....	12-10
USIM Card .....	1-12

Int'l Dial Assistance .....	14-17
Internal Antenna .....	1-2
International Calls .....	3-3
Enter " + " .....	3-16
Internet .....	6-2
Connect .....	6-3, 6-5
Enter URL .....	6-3, 6-6
History .....	6-3, 6-6
Page Operations .....	6-8
Reload .....	6-13
Return to Home .....	6-12
Send URL by Mail .....	6-14
Settings .....	14-26
Interval/Number (Continuous Shooting) .....	14-32

**J**

JAN Code .....	11-16
----------------	-------

**K**

Key Settings .....	14-39
Keypad Lock .....	4-4
Keypad Sound .....	14-39
Keyword Search .....	2-2
Kisekai Theme Settings .....	14-3

**L**

Language (言語選択) .....	14-6
Lock	
Custom Lock .....	4-3
Dial Lock .....	4-3
IC Card Lock .....	11-4
Keypad Lock .....	4-4
Remote Lock .....	11-4

**M**

Mail .....	5-2
Add Folder .....	5-23
Auto-sort .....	5-12
Delete .....	5-22
Delete All Delivery Reports .....	5-22
Delete Attached Files .....	5-22
Delete Folder .....	5-23
Delete Read .....	5-22
Draft .....	5-24
Edit .....	5-23
Filter .....	5-25
Folder Lock .....	5-12
Forward .....	5-24
Mail Box Lock .....	5-12
Mail Setting .....	14-22
Mail Windows .....	5-11
Message Storage Locations .....	5-10



Move .....	5-21	Copy Data to Handset .....	12-13	Playback Windows .....	9-3
Move to Trash Box .....	5-21	Delete Data .....	12-18	Settings .....	14-35
No. of Messages .....	5-23	DPOF setting .....	12-14	<b>My Phone Number</b> .....	1-22
Protect .....	5-21	Folders & Files .....	15-38		
Search Mail .....	5-25	Format .....	12-12	<b>N</b>	
Secret Folders .....	5-13	Insert & Remove .....	12-10	<b>Network Password</b> .....	1-21
Sort .....	5-25	<b>Memory Space (Memory info)</b>		<b>Noise Reduction</b> .....	14-18
Sort Folder .....	5-23	Data Folder .....	12-17	<b>Number of Entries</b>	
<b>Mail List Disp.</b> .....	14-24	Memory Card .....	12-18	Bookmarks .....	6-16
<b>Mail Ring Time</b> .....	14-11	Music .....	9-12	Events .....	11-21
<b>Mail Setting</b> .....	14-22	Number of Saved Pages .....	6-17	Phone Book Entries .....	2-32
<b>Manner Mode</b> .....	1-20	S! Appli .....	9-13	Saved Messages .....	5-23
Manner Mode Set .....	14-13	Server Mail Memory .....	5-21	<b>NW Search Mode</b> .....	14-21
Original .....	14-13	<b>Menu Display Set</b> .....	14-9	<b>O</b>	
Release Time Setting .....	14-13	<b>Menu List</b> .....	15-21	<b>One Seg Digital TV</b> .....	8-2
Start Time Setting .....	14-13	<b>Message Download</b> .....	14-23	<b>Open Inbox Messages</b> .....	5-7
<b>Manufacture Number</b> .....	14-26	<b>Missed Calls</b> .....	3-11	<b>Open New Messages</b> .....	5-7
<b>Marker Stamp</b> .....	12-7	<b>Missed Calls Window</b> .....	14-12	<b>Optional Services</b> .....	3-14
<b>Melody Playback</b>		<b>Move</b>		<b>Original Animation</b> .....	12-4
Playlist .....	12-4	Bookmarks .....	6-16	<b>Original Manner Mode</b> .....	14-13
Set Repeat Play .....	12-16	Files .....	12-9	<b>Original Menu</b> .....	14-10
<b>Memory Card</b> .....	12-10	Messages .....	5-21	<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b> .....	11-2
Access Data .....	12-12	<b>Movie Viewer</b> .....	7-21	Activate Lifestyle-Appli® .....	11-3
Check & Repair .....	12-18	<b>Multi Function</b> .....	2-9	Download Lifestyle-Appli® .....	11-3
Check Available Memory		Activate Another Function .....	2-9	Restrict Use .....	11-4
Space .....	12-18	Combinations .....	15-2	Settings .....	14-40
Check microSD .....	12-18	Toggle Functions .....	2-10	Use .....	11-3
Copy Data from Handset .....	12-13	<b>Music Player</b> .....	9-2		



Own Dictionary .....	2-16
Delete .....	2-31
Edit .....	2-30

## P

<b>Pause dial</b> .....	3-17, 14-17
<b>PC Connection</b> .....	13-5
Access Memory Card Data .....	13-5
Packet Transmission .....	13-6
USB Mode Setting .....	13-5
<b>PC Site Browser</b> .....	6-5
Change Disp. mode .....	6-12
Windows .....	6-5
<b>Phone Book</b>	
Access Entries from Other	
Functions .....	2-22
Change Entry Number .....	2-31
Change Index Tab .....	2-31
Check Number of Entries .....	2-32
Copy .....	2-33
Copy to USIM Card .....	2-24
Create Entries .....	2-20
Create Entries from Other	
Functions .....	2-20
Delete Entries .....	2-33
Delete Items .....	2-33
Dial .....	2-21
Edit an Entry .....	2-32

Group Setting .....	14-16
Restrictions .....	2-23
Ring Tone/Image .....	2-23
S! Addressbook Back-up .....	2-26
Save from Scanned Data .....	11-24
Search .....	2-21
Set Incoming Image .....	2-20
Set Preferred Search Method .....	14-16
Set Secret .....	2-24
<b>PIN Lock &amp; Cancellation</b> .....	1-11
<b>PIN1</b> .....	1-11
<b>PIN1/PIN2</b>	
Change PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2
PIN1 code entry set .....	4-2
<b>Place Calls on Hold</b> .....	3-16
<b>Play</b>	
Answering Machine .....	3-5
Music .....	9-5
Playlist .....	9-7
Voice Announce .....	14-15
Voice Mail .....	3-15
<b>Playlist (Songs)</b> .....	9-6
Add Music .....	9-12
Cancel Playlist Songs .....	9-12
Create .....	9-6
Delete .....	9-13
Play .....	9-7
Sort Playlist .....	9-12

<b>Power On/Off</b> .....	1-18
<b>Power Save Mode</b> .....	1-23
<b>Prefix Numbers</b> .....	3-16
<b>Prefix Setting</b> .....	14-17
<b>Program Guide</b> .....	8-9

## Q

<b>QR Code</b> .....	11-16
<b>Quality Alarm</b> .....	14-18
<b>Quality Setting</b> .....	7-17, 7-18
<b>Quick Launcher</b> .....	2-3
Play Music .....	9-6
Shoot Still Images .....	7-8
Shoot Videos .....	7-10
Watch TV .....	8-7
<b>Quick List</b> .....	3-12
Cancel Entries .....	3-19
Dial .....	3-12
Save Entries .....	3-12
Send Messages .....	3-12
<b>Quick Silent</b> .....	14-12

## R

<b>Receive &amp; Open Messages</b> .....	5-7
Manually Retrieve Messages .....	5-20
Open Inbox Messages .....	5-7
Open New Messages .....	5-7
Reply .....	5-8



Retrieve Complete S! Mail .....	5-20	Handset .....	14-41	Synchronize Types .....	2-26
Save Attachments .....	5-13	Holidays .....	11-22	Use .....	2-26
Use Mail List .....	5-8	Mail Settings .....	14-24	<b>S! Appli</b> .....	<b>9-8</b>
<b>Receive Messages</b> .....	<b>5-20</b>	Original Menu .....	14-10	Activate .....	9-9
<b>Received Calls</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>	PC Site Browser Settings .....	14-27	Delete .....	9-13
<b>Receiving Setting</b> .....	<b>14-23</b>	S! Appli Settings .....	14-36	Download .....	9-8
<b>Reconnect Signal</b> .....	<b>14-18</b>	S! Quick News .....	14-37	Settings .....	14-35
<b>Record Sound</b>		Shortcuts .....	2-28	<b>S! Info Channel</b> .....	<b>10-3</b>
Voice Announce .....	14-15	SMS Center Selection .....	14-25	Checking Latest Information .....	10-3
<b>Record Timer</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>	Total Call Cost .....	3-19	Get Latest Contents .....	10-6
<b>Record Voice</b> .....	<b>11-12</b>	Total Call Time .....	3-19	Save File .....	10-6
<b>Redial</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>	TV Settings .....	14-30	Settings .....	14-37
<b>Register</b>		Yahoo! Keitai Settings .....	14-27	Weather Indicators .....	10-3
S! Quick News Contents .....	10-2	<b>Reset Holidays</b> .....	<b>11-22</b>	<b>S! Quick News</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
<b>Reject Calls W/O Caller ID</b> .....	<b>4-7</b>	<b>Reset Mail Settings</b> .....	<b>14-24</b>	Auto Update Settings .....	10-6
<b>Reject Unknown</b> .....	<b>4-7</b>	<b>Reset PC Site Browser Settings</b> ...	<b>14-27</b>	Check Updated Information .....	10-2
<b>Reload</b>		<b>Reset Settings</b> .....	<b>14-41</b>	Delete Registered News .....	10-6
Data Broadcasts .....	8-16	<b>Reset Storage Area (TV)</b> .....	<b>14-30</b>	Manually Update .....	10-6
Web Page .....	6-13	<b>Reset Total Call Cost</b> .....	<b>3-19</b>	Register News .....	10-2
<b>Remote Control Numbers</b> .....	<b>14-28</b>	<b>Reset Total Call Time</b> .....	<b>3-19</b>	<b>S! Quick News Settings</b> .....	<b>14-37</b>
<b>Reply to Messages</b> .....	<b>5-8</b>	<b>Ring Volume</b> .....	<b>14-10</b>	<b>Save</b>	
<b>Reset</b>				Blog/Mail Member List .....	5-4
Account Details .....	1-22			Bookmarks .....	6-10
Blog/Mail Member List Name .....	5-18			Events .....	11-6
Channel Settings .....	14-30			Holidays .....	11-7
Confirmation Window				Own Dictionary .....	2-16
(Data Broadcasts) .....	14-30			Phone Book Entries .....	2-20
Folder Name (Common Phrases) ..	2-30			Quick List .....	3-12

## S

<b>S! Addressbook Back-up</b> .....	<b>2-26</b>
Auto Synchronize .....	14-16
Check Settings .....	14-16
Check Synchronize Log .....	2-27
Delete Synchronize Log .....	2-33



Saved Pages .....	6-10	<b>Secret Data</b>		<b>Set Sub Clock .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
Tasks .....	11-9	Phone Book Entries .....	2-24	<b>Shoot Still Image .....</b>	<b>7-6</b>
Text Memos .....	11-11	Schedule .....	11-22	<b>Shoot Videos .....</b>	<b>7-10</b>
TV Links .....	8-16	<b>Secret Data Only Mode .....</b>	<b>4-9</b>	Shoot from Quick Launcher .....	7-10
<b>Saved Pages .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>	<b>Secret Folders .....</b>	<b>4-9</b>	Video Type .....	7-24
Delete .....	6-17	<b>Secret Mode .....</b>	<b>4-9</b>	<b>Shooting</b>	
No. of pages .....	6-17	<b>Secure Remote Lock .....</b>	<b>4-5</b>	Auto Timer .....	7-14
Open .....	6-10	<b>Security Codes .....</b>	<b>1-21</b>	BI-DO-RI .....	7-6
Protect .....	6-17	Change .....	1-21	Continuous Shooting .....	7-13
Save .....	6-10	<b>Select Calling Disp./Select</b>		Frames .....	7-14
<b>Schedule (Events) .....</b>	<b>11-6</b>	Receiving Disp. ....	14-12	Movie .....	7-10
Add Holidays .....	11-7	<b>Select Image (Video Call) .....</b>	<b>14-20</b>	Movie (from Quick Launcher) .....	7-10
Check .....	11-7	<b>Select Microphone .....</b>	<b>14-15</b>	Photo .....	7-8
Copy .....	11-22	<b>Select Ring Tone .....</b>	<b>14-11</b>	Photo (from Quick Launcher) .....	7-8
Delete .....	11-8, 11-22	From Data Folder .....	12-15	<b>Shortcut-key Setting .....</b>	<b>14-39</b>
Edit .....	11-21	<b>Send Location Info .....</b>	<b>14-27</b>	<b>Shortcuts/Notifications .....</b>	<b>2-5</b>
No. of schedules .....	11-21	<b>Send Messages .....</b>	<b>5-3</b>	Change Order .....	2-28
Save .....	11-6	Check Delivery .....	5-17	CHG Icon Image .....	2-28
Save a Text Memo to Schedule ..	11-23	<b>Send Referer .....</b>	<b>14-26</b>	Delete Notifications .....	2-28
Window .....	11-6	<b>Server Mail .....</b>	<b>5-8</b>	Delete Shortcuts .....	2-28
<b>Screen Filter .....</b>	<b>14-6</b>	Delete .....	5-21	Reset .....	2-28
<b>Script Settings .....</b>	<b>14-26</b>	Forward .....	5-21	Settings .....	14-7
<b>Scroll (Internet) .....</b>	<b>14-26</b>	Update Mail List .....	5-20	Show/Hide .....	2-29
<b>Scroll (Mail) .....</b>	<b>14-24</b>	<b>Set Hold Tone .....</b>	<b>14-18</b>	<b>Shutter Sound .....</b>	<b>14-31</b>
<b>Search</b>		<b>Set Image Disp. (Video Player) ...</b>	<b>14-35</b>	<b>Simple Menu .....</b>	<b>2-28</b>
Messages in a Folder .....	5-25	<b>Set Main Time .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>	<b>Slide Sound .....</b>	<b>14-14</b>
Phone Book .....	2-21	<b>Set Max Cost Limit .....</b>	<b>14-19</b>	<b>Slide-style Setting .....</b>	<b>14-13</b>
Songs .....	9-12	<b>Set Ring Time .....</b>	<b>4-7</b>	Answer Incoming .....	14-13



Display Missed Call .....	14-12	Songs .....	9-12	Deletion .....	2-15
Display New Mail .....	14-12	Tasks .....	11-22	Emoticons .....	2-14
<b>SMS</b>		<b>Specifications</b> .....	15-35	Key Assignments .....	15-11
Receive .....	5-7	<b>Start Attachment (auto)</b> .....	14-24	Kuten Code List .....	15-14
Send .....	5-5	<b>Stereo Earphone Conversion</b>		Kuten Codes .....	2-30
SMS Center Selection .....	14-25	<b>Cable</b> .....	vi	Line Feed .....	2-29
SMS Settings .....	14-22	<b>Sub-address Setting</b> .....	14-17	Lower Case .....	2-14
<b>Snap Viewer</b> .....	7-19	<b>Subtitles</b> .....	14-28	Lower Case & Upper Case .....	2-29
<b>Software Update</b> .....	15-4			Overwrite & Insert Modes .....	2-29
<b>Songs</b> .....	9-2	<b>T</b>		Paste .....	2-15
Download .....	9-4	<b>T9 Change Mode</b> .....	14-39	Pictographs .....	2-14
Memory Info .....	9-12	<b>T9 Input Mode</b> .....	2-16	Quote Data .....	2-30
Play .....	9-5	<b>Templates (Common Phrases)</b>		Settings .....	14-39
Play from Quick Launcher .....	9-6	Delete .....	2-30	Single-byte & Double-byte .....	2-29
Repeat Setting .....	9-11	Edit .....	2-15, 2-30	Space .....	2-29
Resume Play .....	9-11	Insert .....	2-14	Split Windows .....	2-12
Search .....	9-12	<b>Text Entry</b> .....	2-11	Symbols .....	2-14
Set as Ringtone .....	9-12	2-touch Mode .....	2-16	T9 Input Mode .....	2-16
Sort .....	9-12	5-touch Mode .....	2-13	Text Entry Window .....	2-11
<b>Sort (Change Order)</b>		Alphanumerics, Numbers &		Text Input Methods .....	2-12
Booked Programs .....	8-18	Katakana .....	2-15	Use Dictionary .....	2-29
Files .....	12-15	Character Entry Modes .....	2-12	<b>Text Memo</b> .....	11-11
Folders (Bookmark) .....	6-16	Common Phrases (Templates) .....	2-14	Check Information .....	11-23
Folders (Mail) .....	5-23	Conversion .....	2-13	Delete .....	11-11
Messages .....	5-25	Copy .....	2-15	Edit .....	11-11
Original Menu Items .....	14-10	Correction .....	2-15	Save .....	11-11
Playlist Songs .....	9-12	Cut .....	2-15	Save from Scanned Data .....	11-25
Shortcuts .....	2-28	Dakuten (° ) & Handakuten (° ) ...	2-14	Sort .....	11-23



<b>Text Reader</b> .....	11-18
Check Scanned Text .....	11-20
Correct Scanned Text .....	11-23
Delete Scanned Data .....	11-25
Scan .....	11-19
Scan Modes .....	11-18
Text Scanning Window .....	11-18
<b>To Do List (Tasks)</b> .....	11-9
Change Order .....	11-22
Check .....	11-10
Delete .....	11-10, 11-22
Save .....	11-9
Set Status .....	11-22
<b>Trim Away (Still Image)</b> .....	12-8
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	15-6
<b>TV</b> .....	8-2
Brightness .....	8-15
Channel Settings .....	8-5
Data Broadcasts .....	8-8
Program Guide .....	8-9
Program Info .....	8-15
Record Timer .....	8-13
Settings .....	14-28
View Timer .....	8-13
Watch .....	8-6
Windows .....	8-4
<b>TV Link</b> .....	
Delete .....	8-17

No. of TV links .....	8-16
Save .....	8-16
Show Details .....	8-16

## U

<b>Update</b> .....	
S! Quick News List .....	10-6
Server Mail List .....	5-20
<b>USB Mode Setting</b> .....	13-5
<b>Use as Modem</b> .....	13-6
<b>USIM Card</b> .....	1-10
Copy Phone Book Entries ...	2-24, 2-33
Copy SMS Messages .....	5-22
Delete Phone Book Entries ...	2-33
Delete SMS Messages .....	5-22
Install/Remove .....	1-12
PINs .....	1-11

## V

<b>Vibrator</b> .....	14-11
<b>Video Call</b> .....	3-7
Brightness .....	3-18
Color Mode Set .....	3-18
Settings .....	14-20
Visual Prefer. ....	3-17
White Balance .....	3-18
Window .....	3-7
<b>View Timer</b> .....	8-13

Edit .....	8-18
<b>Viewer Settings</b> .....	14-6
<b>Voice Announce</b> .....	14-15
<b>Voice Call</b> .....	3-3
Send Touch Tones .....	3-17
<b>Voice Mail</b> .....	3-15
Missed Call Notification .....	3-15
Play Messages .....	3-15
<b>Voice Memo</b> .....	11-12
Record the Other Party's Voice ...	11-12
Record Your Voice .....	11-12
<b>Voice Memo in Standby</b> .....	11-12
<b>Volume Restriction</b> .....	14-14

## W

<b>Wallpaper (Stand-by display)</b> .....	
Image in Data Folder .....	12-15
Video in Data Folder .....	12-15
<b>Warning Messages</b> .....	14-27
<b>Warranty</b> .....	15-51
<b>Weather Indicators</b> .....	10-3
Manually Update .....	10-7
Settings .....	14-38
Subscribe for Service .....	10-3

## Y

<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> .....	6-3
Switch to PC .....	6-12



## Warranty

A warranty card is included with 930CA.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

### Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure or malfunction of this product.

## After Sales Service

Refer to "Troubleshooting" (P. 15-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 15-52), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files). SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

## Disclaimer

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for damages arising from natural disasters beyond the control of SoftBank including earthquake, lightning, wind or flood damage, actions of third parties, or other accidents, or from intentional misuse or negligent use, misoperation or otherwise abnormal conditions of use.
- SoftBank assumes no responsibility whatsoever for incidental damages (including alteration or loss of stored content, loss of profit, interruption of business) arising from the use or failure of this product.

It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries).

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility whatsoever for damages arising out of non-observance of the descriptions given in this User Guide.
- SoftBank assumes no responsibility whatsoever for damages arising out of any malfunction as a result of combination with connection devices or software with which SoftBank has had no involvement.
- It is recommended that important data be stored on computer hard disk or other medium. Even in the event of alteration or loss of stored information content, please be aware that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for data regardless of the cause of the failure or trouble.

## Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).



If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

## ■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

# SoftBank 930CA User Guide

---

April 2009, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**

\* For additional information,  
please visit a SoftBank Shop.

**Model: SoftBank 930CA**

**Manufacturer: Casio Hitachi Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.**

---

MDT-000103-EAA0